



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

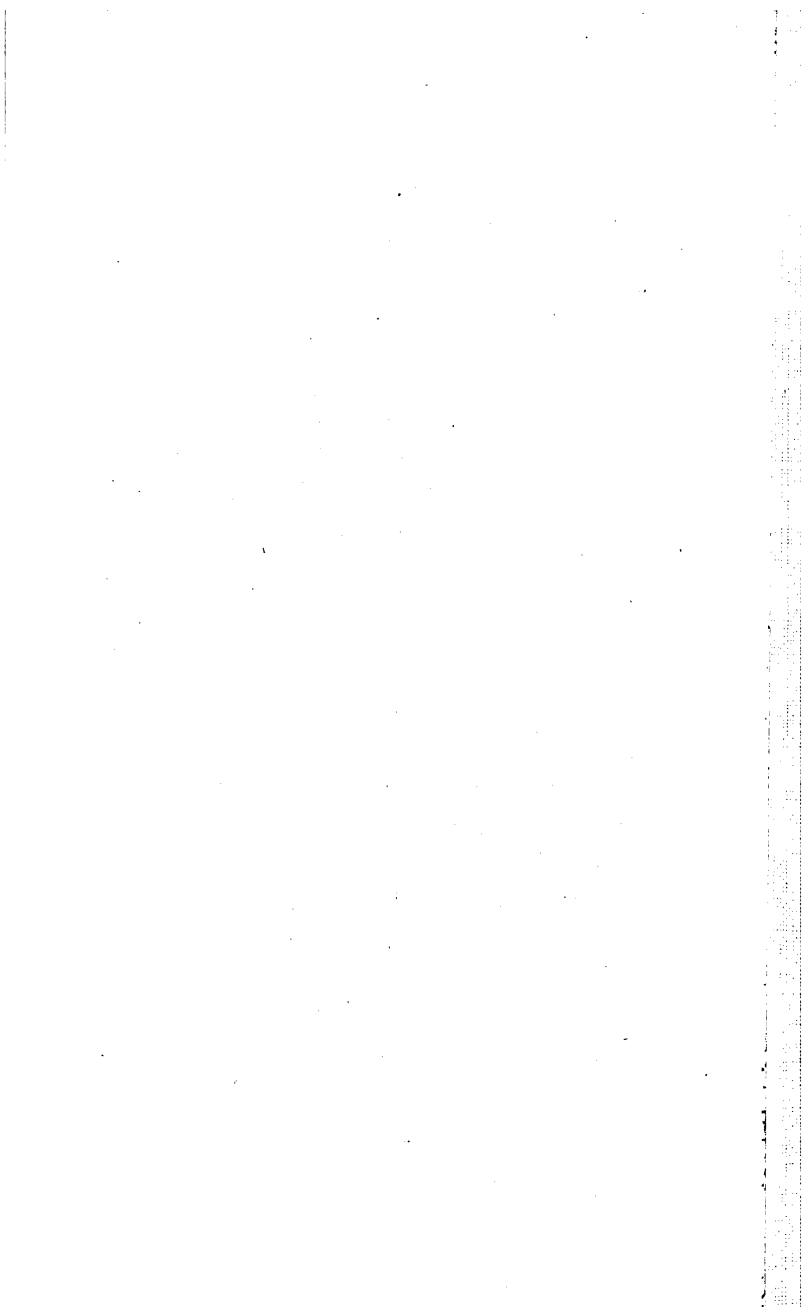
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

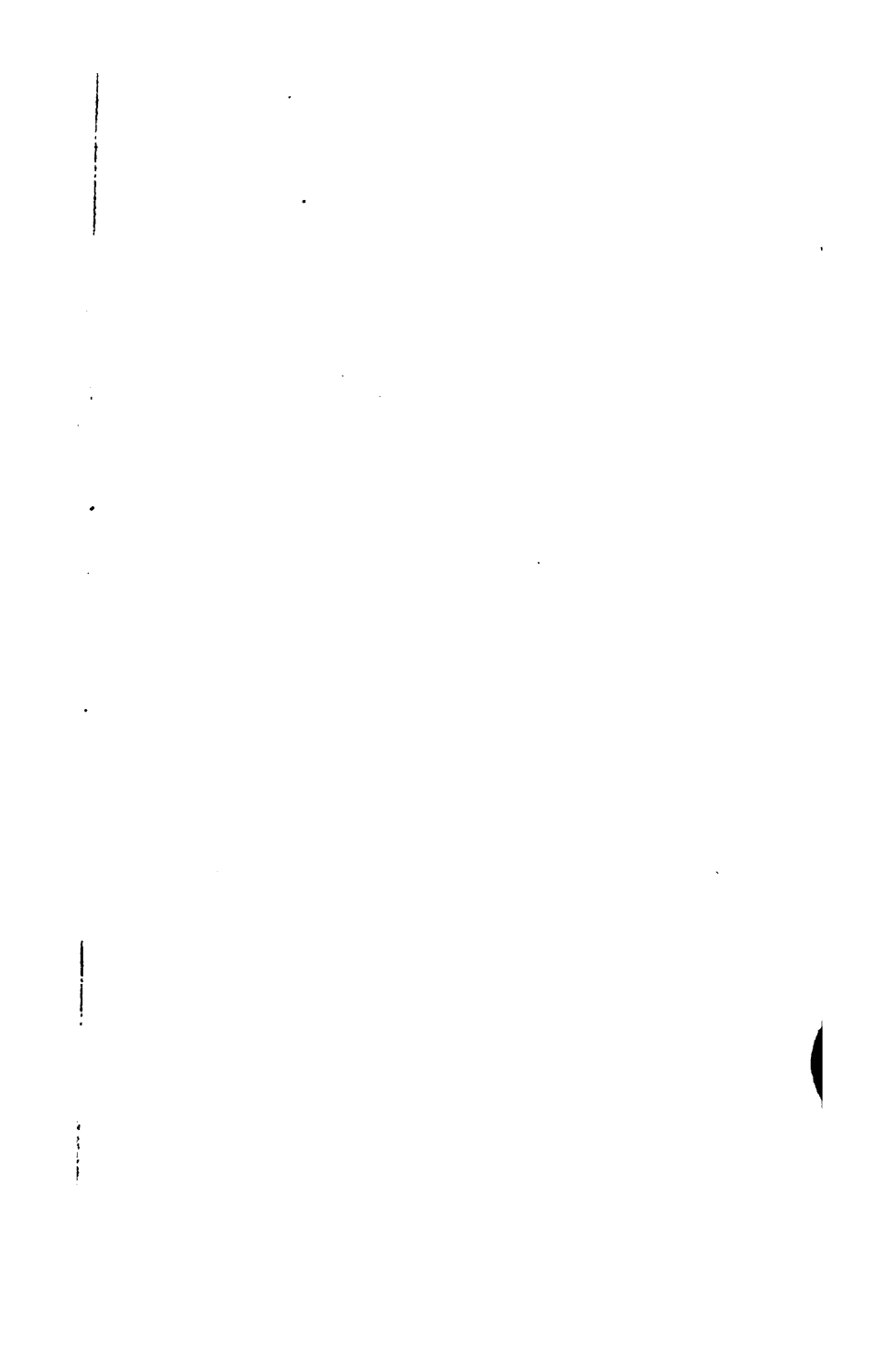
NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 07591924 5







CLASS-BOOK OF
FRENCH COMPOSITION

Blouët
R F n

Oct. 14,

BY THE SAME EDITOR

KEY TO THE CLASS-BOOK OF FRENCH COMPOSITION. (*For Teachers only.*) Cloth, 2s. 6d.

A PRIMER OF FRENCH COMPOSITION. Anecdotes, Fables, etc., specially written in Easy English, with Notes and Vocabulary. New edition, 76 pages, small 8vo., cloth, 1s.

NEW ETYMOLOGICAL FRENCH GRAMMAR, giving for the first time the history of the French Syntax. By A. Chassang, Lauréat de l'Académie Française, Inspecteur Général de l'Instruction Publique. With Introductory Remarks for the use of English Schools, by P. Blouët, B.A. 600 pages, crown 8vo., boards, cloth back, 5s.

LES DEUX SOURDS. A Comedy in One Act. By Jules Moineaux. With Explanatory Notes. Price 9d., cloth, 1s.

'This play can be safely placed in the hands of any schoolboy or girl.'—*P. B.*

BIBLE STORIES. Specially written in easy French for Beginners. By Mme. Blouët. With Questionnaires and a Complete Vocabulary by P. Blouët, B.A. Cloth, price 1s. 6d.

DUMAS, LA TULIPE NOIRE. With Explanatory Notes and Introduction, by P. Blouët, B.A. 320 pages, small 8vo., cloth, 1s. 6d.

CLASS BOOK
OF
FRENCH COMPOSITION

GRADUATED EXTRACTS FROM STANDARD
ENGLISH AUTHORS

EDITED WITH
**Grammatical and Explanatory Notes and an
English-French Vocabulary**

BY
PAUL BLOUËT, B.A. (UNIV. GALLIC.)
(‘MAX O'RELL’)

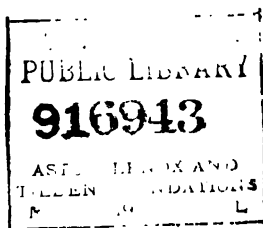
OFFICIER D'ACADÉMIE
FORMERLY HEAD FRENCH MASTER AT ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL

NEW EDITION

LIBRAIRIE HACHETTE & C^{ie}
LONDON: 18 KING WILLIAM STREET, CHANCERY CROSS
PARIS: 79 BOULEVARD SAINT-GERMAIN
BOSTON: CARL SCHOENHOF

1897

All rights reserved



Edinburgh: T. and A. CONSTABLE, Printers to Her Majesty

PREFACE TO THE FOURTEENTH EDITION

THE uninterrupted success which the 'Class-Book of French Composition' has enjoyed for the last twenty years, clearly shows that the method of teaching French Composition, by giving hints to Pupils, instead of giving them whole sentences translated, is being well appreciated.

March 1897.

CONTENTS

PART I

NO.	PAGE
1. Napoléon and Marshal Moncey	1
2. The Marquis de Favières and Samuel Bernard	2
3. On Alexandre Dumas	2
4. On the Same	3
5. Les deux Dumas	3
6. George III. and Sutton	4
7. Charles Fox	4
8. Zeno and his Servant	5
9. Sheridan's Escape	5
10. On Douglas Jerrold	6
11. Edmund Kean	6
12. Spohr	7
13. Korsakof	8
14. A Miser.	9
15. An Emperor of China	9
16. Frederick the Great	10
17. Louis xiv. and the Burgomaster of Amsterdam	10
18. The Duke of Choiseul and Charles Townshend	11
19. The Tongue	12
20. Voltaire and the Duke of Orleans	13
21. On the Duke of Wellington	13
22. The 'Buts'	14
23. What becomes of the Pins	15
24. Character of Hannibal	15
25. Talleyrand and Bonaparte	16
26. Peter the Great and the Lawyers	17

viii CLASS-BOOK OF FRENCH COMPOSITION

no.	PAGE
27. Hogg and Lord Bacon	18
28. Flemish Luxury	19
29. Jasmin, Barber	20
30. The Bloody Battle of the Spurs of Gold	20
31. The Fight at Minnewater	21
32. Caraccioli	22
33. William, Prince of Orange	23
34. Louis xiv.	24
35. Death of Luxembourg	25
36. When to see a Country	26
37. Victor Hugo	27
38. Lord Wellington to General Freyre	28
39. Difficulty and Impossibility	29
40. What to take	30
41. A Prescription	30
42. A Dissenter	30
43. Murder and Assault	31
44. In Going	31
45. Idiots	32
46. All Ladies	33
47. They Die but Once.	33
48. Long Faces	33
49. About the Post-Office	34
50. Gin and Water	34
51. A Lady on Tom Moore	35
52. Body and Spirit	35
53. A Difficulty	36
54. Twenty Times	36
55. An Error	36
56. His own Medicine Chest	37
57. Forgiveness	38
58. A very long Nose	38
59. Examination	39

CONTENTS		ix
no.		PAGE
60.	Cutting out the Third Act	39
61.	Inconvenience	39
62.	I will Return Anon	40
63.	Literal	40
64.	A Discountess	41
65.	Very Poor	41
66.	Two Brothers Dentists	42
67.	Erskine and Thelwall	42
68.	The Force of Truth	43
69.	Garrick's End	43
70.	Oliver Basselin and the Origin of the Word 'Vaude- ville'	44
71.	Bearding a Barber	44
72.	The School for Scandal	45
73.	A Loss	46
74.	Not Taken in	46
75.	On Lord Erskine	47
76.	On Quin	48
77.	Preface to 'The Life of an Oyster written by Himself' 49	
78.	Sharp Girl	49
79.	A Compliment	50
80.	A Kind Request	50
81.	A Western Editor	51

PART II

1.	Character of William the Conqueror	52
2.	Character of Elizabeth	53
3.	Labour	55
4.	Le Père des Lettres	56
5.	Liberty and Slavery	57
6.	The Utility of History	58
7.	Civilisation	60

X CLASS-BOOK OF FRENCH COMPOSITION

NO.	PAGE
8. Reception of James the Second's Queen in France.	61
9. Sir Christopher Hatton	62
10. The last Witches	63
11. An amiable Judge	64
12. Look on this Picture, and then on That	65
13. Eschines and Demosthenes	66
14. The Age of Chivalry	67
15. A Bill of Costs	68
16. The Vicar of Wakefield's Neighbours	69
17. The Vicar of Wakefield's House	70
18. Mary Queen of Scots	71
19. Eldon at Oxford	72
20. Death of Marat	73
21. Victor Hugo's Dramas	74
22. The Trial of Charlotte Corday	74
23. A good Comparison	75
24. A Visit to Bedlam	76
25. The Misanthropist	77
26. Wackford Squeers, Esq.	78
27. Sterne and the Monk	79
28. Rural Life	80
29. Reflect before you Act	81
30. Health	82
31. Augustus and Mecænas	83
32. Judge Robinson and Mr. Curran	84
33. An Irish Ruse	85
34. English Scenery	86
35. A Visit in England	87
36. The Point of Honour	88
37. Oliver Twist asks for Some More	89
38. Lucian on Dancing	90
39. Scotch Luxury	92
40. Cato Meeting the Corpse of his Son	92

CONTENTS

xi

NO.	PAGE
41. Teufelsdröckh	93
42. Charles the Bold	93
43. William Sawtré's Case	94
44. Words of French Origin	95
45. Not Particular	96
46. Colonel Schouardin	97
47. Stage Criticism	97
48. Old Acquaintances	98
49. Danton and Desmoulins	99
50. Friends in Need	99
51. Seymour	100
52. Punishment of Cowardice	101
53. Columbus	102
54. Rather Curious	102
55. General St. Anthony	103
56. The Little Man	104
57. The Duc de Laval	105
58. An Alibi	106
59. The Force of Fashion	106
60. Public Opinion	107
61. The Siege of Cadiz	108
62. Strange Evidence	109
63. Deep in Debt.	110

PART III

1. The Philosopher	111
2. Charles Dickens's Readings	112
3. Civita Vecchia	113
4. Camillus and the Schoolmaster	115
5. Paris and its Fate	116
6. Night	117
7. Ferdinand and Isabella	118

NO.	PAGE
8. Speech of the French Ambassador to Queen Elizabeth in Defence of Mary Stuart	119
9. Henry the Eighth Disengaged	120
10. The Philosopher	121
11. What Governmental Men should be	122
12. Luxury	124
13. Elephant Hunting	125
14. Elephant Hunting (End)	127
15. Hallam	128
16. The Giant and the Dwarf	130
17. Credulity	131
18. Elizabeth	134
19. Louis XVI.	135
20. The Vicar of Wakefield on Matrimony	137
21. Johann Jacoby	138
22. The Microscope Moralised	140
23. Generosity a Virtue of Health	141
24. Insects better Governed than Men	142
25. Bonaparte's Expedient	143
26. The Cataract of Yervenkyle	144
27. Frederick the Great and the Liberty of the Press	145
28. Men of Business	146
29. Young Men of Spirit and Gaiety	148
30. Death of William the Third	150
31. Different Ways of Discussing	153
32. Will Summers, the King's Fool	155
33. Theory and Practice	155
34. Tobacco	156
35. Effects of Music	157
36. A Maiden Lady's Will	158
37. Paley at Cambridge	159
38. Protestant Church Established by Elizabeth	161
VOCABULARY	167

CLASS-BOOK

OF

FRENCH COMPOSITION



PART I

I.—NAPOLEON AND MARSHAL MONCEY.

Napoleon I.¹ was one day² searching for* a book in his library, and at last³ discovered it³ on a shelf somewhat beyond his reach.⁴ Marshal⁵ Moncey, one of the tallest men in⁶ the army, stepped forward, and said: 'Permit me,⁷ Sire; I am higher than your majesty.' 'You are longer, Marshal,' said the emperor, with a frown.

* Words followed by a star must not be translated.

¹ The French make use of the *cardinal* numbers in speaking of sovereigns. The *first* of the series is excepted, and in all cases the article is omitted before the numbers. ² Adverbs and adverbial locutions follow the verb immediately. ³ Personal pronoun objects precede the verb. ⁴ *Beyond his reach*=*trop élevée pour qu'il pût y atteindre*. ⁵ When there is an adjective or a noun used adjectively before a proper name, the article must precede the adjective or the noun used adjectively. ⁶ *In* is translated by *de* after a superlative. ⁷ When the verb is written in the imperative *affirmative*, the personal pronouns objects follow the verb. The pronouns *me* and *te* are then replaced by *moi* and *toi*.

II.—THE MARQUIS DE FAVIÈRES AND SAMUEL BERNARD.

The Marquis de Favières, a¹ great borrower and a¹ bad paymaster, called on Samuel Bernard, the great financier, one morning, and said: 'Sir, I am going² to astonish you;³ I am the Marquis de Favières; I do not know⁴ you,³ and I come to⁵ borrow five hundred⁶ pounds of you.'⁷ 'Sir,' replied Bernard, 'I am going to astonish you still more;⁸ I know you, and yet I am going to lend them to you.'⁹

¹ Suppress before a word in apposition. ² That form does not exist in French; translate *I go*. ³ See Ex. I. Note ¹. ⁴ To know = *connaître*, speaking of persons, countries, and places. ⁵ *To*, meaning 'in order to,' 'for the purpose of,' is rendered by *pour*. ⁶ See Ex. V. Note ⁶. ⁷ In French *to borrow of you* is *to borrow to you*. Personal pronouns, direct as well as indirect objects (dative or accusative) come immediately before the verb. ⁸ *More* is here *davantage*, and not *plus*, because it is used absolutely. ⁹ When two personal pronouns are objects of a verb, they both precede the verb, the dative being first and the accusative second. There are two exceptions to this rule: *Lui*, *to him*, *to her*; *Leur*, *to them*, follow the personal pronoun accusative.

III.—ON ALEXANDRE DUMAS.

It is said¹ that Alexandre Dumas is not the author of many novels which bear his signature. One day he met his son and said: 'Well, what do you think of² my last novel? Have you read³ it?'⁴ 'No, I have not,⁵ father,⁶ have you?'⁷ replied Alexandre Dumas *fils*, whose⁸ reputation for wit is well known⁹ and deserved.⁹

¹ *It is said* = *on dit*. When the agent of the passive is not known, the active form with *on* must be used. ² *To think of* is *penser à*; but when it means *to have an opinion of*, it is *penser de*. ³ The past participle used with the auxiliary *avoir*, always agrees with its

direct object, when that direct object is placed *before* the participle. ⁴ In compound tenses, personal pronoun objects precede the auxiliary: *Je les ai aimés*=*I have loved them*. As for *aimés*, with an *s*, see Note ³ above. ⁵ Translate *I have not read it*. ⁶ The possessive adjective is used in the vocative case. ⁷ *Have you?*=*et vous?* ⁸ *Whose*=*dont*, to be immediately followed by the subject of the subordinate sentence. ⁹ The past participle used with the auxiliary *être* agrees with its subject or nominative both in number and gender: *Nous sommes aimés*=*we are loved*.

IV.—ON THE SAME.

Alexandre Dumas having noticed that in the English language there were a great many¹ words of French aspect, wrote this characteristic phrase:—‘English is only French badly pronounced.’

The same Alexandre Dumas on² returning³ to Paris from Naples, wrote a letter beginning as follows:³ ‘I have just⁴ returned,⁵ as everybody knows.’

¹ *Many*=*nombre de*. ² *En*, the only preposition which requires the following verb to be in the present participle. *All* the other prepositions require the infinitive. ³ *As follows*=*ainsi*. ⁴ *To have just*=*venir de*. ⁵ *To return* is *revenir*, when meaning *to come back*; and *retourner*, when meaning *to go back*. See Vocabulary.

V.—LES DEUX DUMAS.

A play by a certain M. Dumas was received at the *Théâtre Français* at the time¹ when² a comedy by Alexandre Dumas was being acted.³ Both gentlemen met⁴ one evening in the lobby⁵ of the theatre. ‘Two hundred⁶ years ago,’ said M. Dumas to Alexandre Dumas, ‘the *Théâtre Français* had the two Corneilles,⁸ now it has the two Dumas. . . .’ ‘That is true,’ answered Alexandre Dumas, ‘quite true, and I hope you will succeed,⁹ Thomas.’ Everybody knows¹⁰ that the

great Corneille was called¹¹ Pierre and his brother Thomas.

¹ *à l'époque.* ² *When*, adverb *où.* ³ When the agent of the passive is not known, use the active voice with *on*, or else, use the verb reflexively. ⁴ *To meet* (neuter)=*se rencontrer.* ⁵ *In the lobby* = *au foyer.* *In* is not here translated by *dans*, because *dans* is employed in a determinate sense; it means *within, inside*, and is not used when no stress is laid on the sense of *in* (*within, inside*). *He has a sword IN his hand* is in French *Il a une épée A la main*; the whole sword cannot be within, inside the hand. *To get INTO parliament* (as a member) is in French *Entrer AU parlement*; *Entrer DANS le parlement* would mean *to go inside the parliament* (the building). ⁶ *Fingt* and *cent* are the only cardinal numbers which take an *s* in the plural, that is, when multiplied by a number and not followed by another number. ⁷ *Ago*=*il y a*, before the number or time. ⁸ Proper names do not take the mark of the plural. ⁹ *I hope you will succeed*=*Je vous souhaite bonne chance.* ¹⁰ *To know* = *savoir*, speaking of things; *connaître*, speaking of things, means *to know thoroughly.* ¹¹ *To be called*=*s'appeler.*

VI.—GEORGE III. AND SUTTON.

George III.,¹ speaking to Archbishop² Sutton respecting his large³ family, made the remark: 'I believe your grace has better⁴ than a dozen.' 'No, Sire,' replied the archbishop, 'only eleven.' 'Well,'⁵ replied the king, 'is not that⁶ better than a dozen?'

¹ See Ex. I. Note ¹. ² See Ex. I. Note ². ³ *Nombreux.* ⁴ *Better* is *meilleur* when adjective, and *mieux* when adverb. ⁵ *Well*, interjection, is *Hé bien.* ⁶ *Is not that better*=*cela ne vaut-il pas mieux.* *To be better* (impersonal)=*valoir mieux.*

VII.—CHARLES FOX.

Charles Fox once received a severe lecture¹ from his father about his extravagance, who² concluded by³ saying he wondered⁴ he could enjoy⁵ a moment's repose, when he considered⁶ the immense sums⁷ he owed.⁸ 'My dear father,'

replied he, 'you should⁸ not wonder at⁹ that; but rather how my creditors can.'¹⁰

¹ *Semonce*. Turn : received once a severe lecture. See Ex. I. Note ².

² The relative pronoun *qui* would in French refer to *extravagance*, if the sentence were translated literally; the word *father* must be brought immediately before *qui*. Translate then into French : *C. F. received once a severe lecture about his extravagance from his father, who*. Rule.—The relative pronoun ought always to be placed as near its antecedent as possible, in order to avoid ambiguity. ³ Translate *by*, before a present participle, by *en*, before a present participle. ⁴ *To wonder* = *s'étonner*, followed by the subjunctive mood. Rule.—Verbs expressing 'doubt,' 'fear,' 'sur-

prise,' 'admiration,' 'will,' 'wish,' 'desire,' 'consent,' 'order,' 'command,' and all verbs expressing a certain state of the mind, such as 'to be glad,' 'to be sorry,' etc., require the following verb to be in the subjunctive mood. ⁵ *To enjoy* = *jouir de*. ⁶ The imperfect indicative must be used; you could say *was considering*. ⁷ *Sum* = *somme* (fem.) from *summa*; *somme* (masc.), a nap, from *somnus*. ⁸ Use the conditional of the verb *devoir* when *should* means *ought to*. ⁹ *To wonder at* = *s'étonner de*. *To wonder how* = *se demander comment*. ¹⁰ Translate literally *but wonder rather how my creditors can enjoy a moment's repose, or can it (le)*.

NOTE.—*A moment's repose* = *un moment de repos*.

VIII.—ZENO AND HIS SERVANT.

The philosopher Zeno¹ believed in² an inevitable destiny. His servant availed himself³ of this doctrine while he was beaten⁴ for a theft,⁵ by⁶ exclaiming: 'Was I not destined to⁷ rob?' 'Yes,' replied Zeno, 'and to be corrected also.'

¹ Proper names ending in *o* in English end in *on* in French. ² *à*.

³ *To avail oneself* = *tirer parti*. ⁴ See Ex. III. Note ¹. ⁵ Translate *for having thieved*, and remember that the infinitive of a verb must be used after a preposition. ⁶ See Ex. VII. Note ³. ⁷ *à*.

IX.—SHERIDAN'S ESCAPE.

Sheridan never was without a* reason, and never failed to¹ extricate himself² in any emergency³ by his wit. At a country-house, where

he was once on a visit,⁴ an elderly lady desired to be his companion⁵ in a walk. He excused himself at first on account of the badness⁶ of the weather. She soon afterwards,⁷ however, intercepted him⁸ in an attempt to⁹ escape without her. 'Well,' she said,¹⁰ 'it has cleared up,¹¹ I see.' 'Why,¹² yes,' he answered,¹⁰ 'it has cleared up for *one*, but not enough for *two*.'

¹ *To fail to*=*manquer de*. ² *To extricate oneself*=*se tirer d'affaire*. ³ *Emergency*=*circonstance critique*. In this sentence *by his wit* will have to come before in *any emergency*, as being shorter. **Rule.**—Of two objects the shorter must come first. ⁴ *On a visit*=*en visite*. ⁵ *To be his companion*=*l'accompagner*. ⁶ *The badness of the weather*=*le mauvais temps*. ⁷ Adverbs and adverbial locutions follow verbs immediately. However, when the adverbial locution is very long, it is better to place it at the beginning of the sentence. ⁸ See Ex. I. Note ³. ⁹ *In an attempt to*=*au moment où il cherchait à*. ¹⁰ The subject is always placed after the verb when words of any one are quoted. ¹¹ *It has cleared up*=*le temps s'est éclairci*. Reflexive verbs are used with the auxiliary *être* in compound tenses. ¹² *Why*, interj.=*mais*.

X.—ON DOUGLAS JERROLD.

Albert Smith's literary signature, 'A. S.,' was once¹ shown² to Douglas Jerrold, who³ remarked: 'Ah, that is a fellow who never tells more than⁴ two-thirds⁵ of the truth.'

¹ Ex. I. Note ². ² See Ex. III. Note ¹. ³ Ex. VII. Note ². ⁴ *Than* followed by a number is *de*, and not *que*. ⁵ *Two thirds*=*les deux tiers*.

XI.—EDMUND KEAN.

Edmund Kean was one evening¹ performing² before an ignorant and unappreciative³ provincial⁴ audience.⁵ It is related⁶ that he was⁷ first⁸ hissed and then⁹ pelted with¹⁰ apples. The great tragedian stood¹¹ this for¹² a time, but, getting out of patience,¹³ he picked up¹⁴ some of

the apples and thus¹⁵ addressed¹⁶ his opponents: 'Gentlemen, as much¹⁷ goose as you please,¹⁸ but no¹⁹ apple-sauce!' ²⁰

¹ See Ex. I. Note 2. ² Ex. II. Note 2 and Ex. VII. Note 4. ³ When two or more adjectives qualify the same noun, they are placed after that noun. ⁴ *Provincial*=*de province*, to be placed after the noun and before the two adjectives. ⁵ *Audience*, meaning *assembly of people*, is *auditoire* (m.) and *audience* (fem.), when meaning interview. ⁶ See Ex. III. Note 1. ⁷ In the preterite (narrative). ⁸ *First*, *adverb*, is *d'abord*. In compound tenses, adverbs and adverbial locutions are placed between the auxiliary and the past participle. When adverbial locutions are very long, they are placed after the past participle or at the beginning of the sentence; so are always adverbs of time, such as *aujourd'hui*, *hier*, etc. ⁹ *Ensuite*. ¹⁰ *Pelted with apples*. Use the active form and say *on lui lança des pommes*. ¹¹ *To stand, to endure*=*supporter, endurer*. ¹² *For*, speaking of time, is *pendant*. ¹³ *To get out of patience*=*Perdre patience*. ¹⁴ *To pick up*=*ramasser*. ¹⁵ See Ex. I. Note 2. ¹⁶ *To address*=*s'adresser à*. ¹⁷ *As much . . . as*=*autant . . . que*. Rule.—*De*, not followed by the article, must always precede a noun which comes after an adverb of quantity. ¹⁸ The future must be used when a future action is implied. Use *vouloir* for *to please* in this sentence. ¹⁹ *No, not any*=*pas de*. The partitive article is always *de*, and never *du, de la, de l', or des*, when the sentence is negative. ²⁰ *Apple-sauce*=*sauce aux pommes*.

XII.—SPOHR.

Spohr was one day¹ met² in the street on his way³ to the theatre, where he had⁴ to conduct the opera in⁵ honour of the birthday of the Elector. He was clothed in⁶ a heavy winter mantle, although⁷ the thermometer stood⁸ eighty degrees above zero. 'Are you sick?' asked a friend who met him. 'No,' replied Spohr, throwing back his mantle, and showing his breast covered with⁹ orders. 'I am only ashamed to¹⁰ go thus through the streets.'

¹ See Ex. I. Note 2. ² See Ex. III. Note 1. ³ Translate *going*. ⁴ *To have to*=*avoir à*. ⁵ *En*, always used in a vague and indeterminate sense, and therefore never followed by the definite article *le, la, les*, except in few expressions sanctioned by usage, such as *en la présence*, etc. ⁶ *To be dressed, clothed in*=*être vêtu de*; *was* is to be

put in the imperfect indicative, because he was clothed in, etc., at the time he was met, etc. ⁷ *Bien que, quoique*, with the subjunctive. ⁸ *To stand=être*, to be put in the subjunctive after *quoique* or *bien que*, and in the imperfect subjunctive, because *he was clothed* is in a past tense. ⁹ *De*. *With* is translated by *avec* when it means 'with the help of,' or 'in company with,' as *I am with my father*, or *I have seen that star with a telescope*. But *I have seen that star with my own eyes*, would be in French, *J'ai vu cette étoile DE mes propres yeux*; no help was required. *I have struck him with my fist*, *I have struck him with a stick*. *De* would be used in the first sentence, and *avec* in the second. ¹⁰ *Ashamed to=honteux de*.

XIII.—KORSAKOF.

Korsakof, a favourite of the Empress Catherine, possessed ¹ a handsome face, and a very elegant figure, but was entirely destitute of knowledge. As soon as he had ² obtained the post of favourite, he thought ³ that a man like him ⁴ ought ⁵ naturally to* have a library. Accordingly, he sent for ⁶ the most celebrated bookseller in ⁶ St. Petersburg, without delay, and informed him ⁷ that he wanted ⁸ books for his house at Wasiltchikoff, of which ⁹ the empress had just ¹⁰ made him ¹¹ a* present. The bookseller asked ² him ¹² what books he wanted. 'You understand that better ¹³ than I,' ³ replied the favourite, 'it ¹⁴ is your affair: but there must be ¹⁵ great books ¹⁶ at the bottom and little ones* above, exactly as at the empress's.' ¹⁷

¹ He was possessing at the time this story took place, therefore use the imperfect indicative. ² Preterite indicative. ³ Personal pronouns used by themselves or after prepositions are *moi, toi, lui, elle, soi, nous, vous, eux, elles*. ⁴ *Devait*. ⁵ *To send for=Envoyer chercher, or Faire venir*. ⁶ See Ex. I. Note 6. ⁷ *And informed him=et lui dit*. ⁸ *That he was wanting*. Use the imperfect indicative. ⁹ *Of which=dont*. ¹⁰ See Ex. IV. Note 4. ¹¹ *Him*, dative. ¹² *Him*, dative. *Demander quelqu'un* (accus.) would mean to ask for some one. ¹³ See Ex. VI. Note 4. ¹⁴ *It is ce* in French, when it can be replaced in English by *that*. Besides, the pronouns *he, she, it, this, they, these*, used with the verb *être*, are all translated by *ce*, when the attribute of the verb *être* is either a noun, a demonstrative, or a possessive pronoun. Ex.: *C'est ma sœur*, SHE is my SISTER; *Ce sont celles de mon ami*, THEY are THOSE (the sisters) of my

friend; *ce sont les MIENNES*, THEY are MINE. ¹⁵ *There must be = il faut qu'il y ait*. Impersonal verbs (*il faut*) require the subjunctive. *There is = il y a*. ¹⁶ *Books* is taken in a partitive sense, but it is preceded by an adjective, and the partitive article must therefore be *de* only. ¹⁷ *At the empress's, at the house of the empress. At the house of = chez*.

XIV.—A MISER.

Mr. Watson, uncle to¹ the late² Marquis of R., a man of immense fortune,³ finding himself at the point⁴ of death, desired⁵ a friend who was present to give him a drawer, in which⁶ was an old shirt, that⁷ he might put it on.* Being asked⁸ why he wished to change⁹ his linen, when he was so ill: 'Because,' replied he, 'I know that the shirt I have on¹⁰ at my death belongs to the nurse,¹¹ and that old one¹² is good enough¹³ for her.'¹⁴

¹ *De*. ² *Feu*. This adjective always comes before the noun, and agrees with it, if placed *immediately* before it, but does not, if placed before the article. Ex.: *La feu reine* or *Feu la reine*, the ex-queen, the late queen. ³ Translate of an immense fortune. ⁴ *Article*. ⁵ *Prier* with *de* before the infinitive which follows. ⁶ *où*, dans lequel. ⁷ *that*, in order that, *afin que*, *pour que*, with the subjunctive. ⁸ See Ex. III. Note ¹. ⁹ The two verbs *changer* and *redoubler* often take *de* before the noun following, and do not admit of the possessive adjective. Ex.: *He is changing his boots, il change de bottes. To change one's mind = changer d'avis*. ¹⁰ *I have on, que je porte*. ¹¹ *garde-malade*. ¹² *That old one = cette vieille-là*. ¹³ Translate enough good. ¹⁴ See Ex. XIII. Note ³.

XV.—AN EMPEROR OF CHINA.

An emperor of China had devoted himself¹ to the study of alchemy. An impostor brought him an elixir, declaring that if he would² drink it he would become immortal. A mandarin who was present, having in vain tried to³ undeceive him, took the cup and drank the liquor. The emperor, enraged at⁴ his presumption, condemned him to death. 'Sire,' said the mandarin, 'if this liquor

can bestow immortality, you cannot put me to death; if not,⁶ what harm⁶ have I done?' This speech⁷ appeased the emperor, who admired and praised the wisdom of the mandarin.

¹ In compound tenses personal pronoun objects precede the auxiliary. Reflexive verbs are used with the auxiliary *être* in their compound tenses. ² Imperfect indicative of *vouloir*. An idea of will is implied, it is not the conditional of *to drink*. ³ *De*. ⁴ *Enraged at*=*furieux de*. ⁵ *Sinon*. ⁶ *Quel mal?* ⁷ *Ces paroles*.

XVI.—FREDERICK THE GREAT.

A French nobleman, who waited upon¹ Frederick the Great of Prussia, at Sans-Souci, expressed his astonishment at seeing² the emperor's portrait in every apartment of the palace; and asked the king³ what might be the reason⁴ of his thus honouring⁵ the portrait of his greatest enemy. 'Oh!' said the king, 'the emperor is a busy, enterprising young monarch,⁶ and I find it necessary⁷ always⁸ to have an eye upon him.'⁹

¹ *Visiter*. ² *De voir*. ³ *To the king*. See Ex. XIII. Note ¹². ⁴ *dans quel but* (lit. *For what end*). ⁵ *Il honorait ainsi*. ⁶ *Jeune* is an adjective that comes before the noun. Besides, see Ex. XI. Note ². ⁷ Translate: *and I find that it is necessary to*.

NOTE.—*It is*, in the above sentence, must be translated by *il est*, not by *c'est*, because *what is necessary* follows, and it is *il* (impersonal). If the sentence, on the contrary, were, *I must have an eye upon him, it is necessary*, it would be *ce*, because *it* would refer to what is said before, *it* could be replaced by *that* in English. See Ex. XIII. Note ¹⁴. This rule always holds good when *it is* is followed by an adjective or an expression used adjectively.

⁸ See Ex. I. Note ². ⁹ *To keep, to have an eye upon some one*=*ne pas perdre quelqu'un de vue*, or *avoir quelqu'un sous les yeux*.

XVII.—LOUIS XIV. AND THE BURGO-MASTER OF AMSTERDAM.

When Louis XIV.¹ was at the gates of Amsterdam, which, in all probability, could not have² withstood³ him,⁴ and when⁵ the consternation

was general, the magistrates assembled,⁶ and after deliberating⁷ on what was to be done,⁸ they agreed unanimously to deliver up* the keys of the town. It was observed,⁹ however, that an old burgomaster, having fallen asleep,¹⁰ had not voted. They awakened him and then told him that they had resolved to deliver up* the keys to Louis. 'Has he demanded them?'¹¹ said the old man.¹² 'Not yet,' said the council. 'Then, gentlemen,' he replied, 'wait at least till¹³ he be pleased to seek them.' This expression, it is said,¹⁴ saved the republic.

¹ See Ex. I. Note 1. ² *Could not have*=*n'aurait pas pu*. ³ *To withstand*=*résister à*. ⁴ See Ex. I. Note 3. ⁵ Conjunctions are not repeated in French, they are replaced by *que* after they have been expressed once. *Que*, thus used, governs the same mood as the conjunction which it replaces. There is, however, one exception. *Si* governs the indicative, and *que* replacing *si*, requires the subjunctive. Ex.: *si vous venez à Londres et QUE vous y RESTIEZ un mois, je retournerai à Paris avec vous*. *If you come to London and stay here a month, I will go back to Paris with you*. In this sentence the conjunction is only used once in English, it must be expressed twice in French. Rule.—In French the conjunction is first expressed and then *que* must be used as many times as the conjunction is again expressed or understood in English. ⁶ *To assemble* (neuter)=*s'assembler*. ⁷ Always translate, *after having*, etc., and remember that prepositions are followed by the infinitive, with the exception of *en*, which is followed by the present participle. ⁸ *I am to, I was to, je dois, je devais*. *On what was to be done*. Translate: *On what one was to do*: according to Ex. III. Note 1; *sur ce qu'on devait faire*. ⁹ See Ex. III. Note 1. ¹⁰ *To fall asleep*=*s'endormir*. Besides, see Ex. IX. Note 11. ¹¹ See Ex. III. Note 3 and Note 4. ¹² *Old man*=*vieillard*. ¹³ *To wait until, till*=*attendre que*. In this expression *que* stands for *jusqu'à ce que*, and therefore requires the subjunctive. ¹⁴ Translate: *it is said that this expression saved the republic*, and see Ex. III. Note 1.

XVIII.—THE DUKE OF CHOISEUL AND CHARLES TOWNSHEND.

When the Duke of Choiseul, a remarkably meagre man,¹ came to² London to³ negotiate a peace,⁴ Charles Townshend, being asked⁵ whether

the French Government had⁶ sent the preliminaries of a treaty, answered: 'I do not know, but they have sent the outline of an ambassador.'

¹ Translate: *who was remarkably meagre*. ² *In*, *to* and *at* are translated by *en* before names of countries and by *à* before names of towns, places. ³ See Ex. II. Note⁵. ⁴ *Un traité de paix*. ⁵ See Ex. III. Note¹. ⁶ *Avait*, in the imperfect indicative, not in the perfect, because C. Townshend was asked whether the French Government had sent the preliminaries of a treaty at that very time when the question was asked.

REMARK.—If the time past referred to is the same both in the principal and the subordinate sentences, the imperfect indicative must be used in the subordinate. Of course I suppose that the subjunctive has not to be used in the subordinate sentence. I have to translate: *I met a man who carried a box*; I will say *J'ai rencontré un homme qui PORTAIT une boîte*, if I want to express that the man was carrying the box when I met him; but I will say *J'ai rencontré un homme qui PORTA une boîte*, if I wish to express that the man carried a box any time before I met him.

XIX.—THE TONGUE.

One morning a party came into the public rooms at Buxton, somewhat later than usual,¹ and requested some tongue. They were told² that Lord Byron had eaten it³ all.⁴ 'I am very angry with⁵ his lordship,' said a lady, loud enough⁶ for him⁷ to hear the observation. 'I am sorry for it,⁸ madam,' retorted Lord Byron; 'but before⁹ eating the tongue I was assured¹⁰ you did not want¹¹ it.'

¹ *D'habitude*. ² See Ex. III. Note¹. *To tell some one* is *dire à quelqu'un*. ³ See Ex. III. Note⁴. ⁴ *All*, in French, follows the verb, not the personal pronoun, as in English. Ex.: *They all go out, ils sortent tous*; *I know them all, je les connais tous*. ⁵ *To be angry with*=*être fâché contre*. ⁶ See Ex. XIV. Note¹³. ⁷ Translate: *In order that he might hear*. *In order that*=*pour que*, with the subjunctive. ⁸ *For it*=*en* before the verb. ⁹ *Before* is *avant*, when preposition of time and order; *devant* when preposition of place; *avant de* when before an infinitive; *avant que* with the subjunctive, when a conjunction; *auparavant*, when an adverb of time. ¹⁰ See Ex. III. Notes¹ and ⁴. ¹¹ *To want, to need*=*avoir besoin de*. Again see⁸ above.

XX.—VOLTAIRE AND THE DUKE OF ORLEANS.

A French nobleman who had been satirised by Voltaire, meeting the poet soon after, gave him¹ a hearty drubbing.² The poet immediately³ flew to the Duke of Orleans, told him⁴ how he had been used,⁵ and begged⁶ he would do him justice. 'Sir,' replied the Duke, with a significant smile, 'it has been done⁷ you already.'

¹ See Ex. I. Note ³. ² *a hearty drubbing=une bonne volée de coups de bâton.* ³ See Ex. I. Note ². ⁴ Turn into *said* to him. ⁵ See Ex. III. Note ¹. *To use some one=traiter quelqu'un.* ⁶ Translate: *begged him to do him justice.* ⁷ See Ex. III. Notes ¹, ³, and ⁴, and Ex. XI. Note ⁶.

XXI.—ON THE DUKE OF WELLINGTON.

The Duke of Wellington was once in danger at sea,¹ when, just before² bedtime,³ the captain came to his cabin, and announced that in⁴ a few⁵ minutes all would be over.⁶ 'Very well,' said the Duke, 'then I shall not take off⁷ my boots.'

A guest at the Duke of Wellington's table blurted out⁸ the question, 'Pray, Duke, were you surprised at⁹ Waterloo?' With what a* neat and easy turn of the wrist¹⁰ he ran the unhappy man through!¹¹ 'No, but I am¹² now.'

¹ *At sea=en mer, sur mer.* ² See Ex. XIX. Note ². ³ *L'heure de se coucher.* ⁴ Speaking of time, *dans* means the time *when*, and *en* the time *how long*. Ex.: *J'irai à Paris DANS dix heures, I shall go to Paris in ten hours* (hence); *j'irai à Paris EN dix heures, I shall go to Paris in ten hours* (it will take me ten hours. . . .) ⁵ *a few=quelques; few=peu de.* ⁶ Translate: *all would be finished.* ⁷ *To take off=ôter, enlever.* ⁸ *To blurt out=laisser échapper.* ⁹ See Ex. XVIII. Note ². ¹⁰ *Avec quelle grâce et quelle facilité.* ¹¹ *To run through* (active) is literally *transpercer*, but here the sentence should be *il lui enfonça le fer dans le cœur.* ¹² When a noun is used adjectively, an adjective,

or a participle is understood after the verb *être*, *le* (so) must precede the verb. Ex.: *Are you surprised? I am. Êtes-vous surpris? Je LE suis.*

When a noun or an adjective used substantively is understood after *être*, *le*, *la*, *les*, according to the gender and number of the noun understood, must precede the verb. Ex.: *Are you the mother of Henry? I am. Êtes-vous la mère d'Henri? Je LA suis.* But, according to the foregoing rule, *Are you a mother? I am*, would be *êtes-vous mère? Je LE suis.* Here *mère* is a noun used adjectively; that is why *a* must not be translated before *mère*, and why *le*, invariable, must be used.

XXII.—THE 'BUTS.'

When the affairs of Italy were¹ the subject of general conversation, Douglas Jerrold was very enthusiastic in favour of Mazzini and² his party. He was talking hopefully and warmly on the subject one evening at a party,³ when⁴ a very cold, stiff, and argumentative⁵ gentleman was present. This iced man interrupted⁶ Jerrold at every turn with a doubting 'but.' At last, Jerrold, fairly roused by the coolness of his opponent, turned⁷ sharply⁸ upon him, and said: 'I will thank you⁹ to throw no more¹⁰ of your cold water "buts" at me.'¹¹

¹ To be the subject of=*faire le sujet de*. ² Of must be repeated before *his party*. ³ *Soirée* (fem.). ⁴ The subject of the verb in this subordinate sentence is very long, the verb should be put before it. Translate *when was present* by *où se trouvait*. ⁵ *Qui se plaisait à argumenter*. Besides, see Ex. XI. Note ³. ⁶ *was interrupting*; the imperfect. ⁷ To turn (movement of the body)=*se tourner*. ⁸ *Brusquement, vivement, aigrement*. ⁹ Translate *I shall be obliged to you*. ¹⁰ *No more*=*ne* before the verb and *plus* after it. The expressions *not, never, nothing, no more*, are rendered by *ne . . . pas, ne . . . jamais, ne . . . rien, ne . . . plus*. In simple tenses, *ne* comes before the verb, and *pas, jamais*, etc., after it, *Je NE mange PAS*. In compound tenses, *ne* comes before the auxiliary, and *pas, jamais*, etc., between the auxiliary, and the past participle, *Je N'ai RIEN mangé*. In the infinitive mood, both parts of the negation come before the verb, the one immediately after the other. *NE RIEN manger*. ¹¹ The dative *to me*. See Ex. II. Note 7.

XXIII.—WHAT BECOMES¹ OF THE PINS.¹

It is estimated² that no less than³ 50,000,000 pins are manufactured² daily in⁴ England and in Dublin; and that out of⁵ this number 37,000,000 are produced in⁴ Birmingham alone, thus leaving 13,000,000 for the production of Dublin, Stroud, and London. The weight of wire consumed for the purpose is 1275½ tons⁶ every year.

Question: What becomes¹ of these pins produced with such⁷ rapidity and in such numbers?⁸ That⁹ the tremendous quantity above referred to is sold² every day is evident from facts; but where these necessary items to¹⁰ our domestic comfort disappear,¹¹ is a matter¹² for curious speculation.¹³

Put all the figures into words. ¹ Translate *what do pins become*. ² See Ex. III. Note ¹. ³ See Ex. X. Note ⁴. ⁴ See Ex. XVIII. Note ². ⁵ *out of=sur*. ⁶ The adjective *demi* agrees in gender with the noun, when it follows the noun, and does not when it precedes it. ⁷ *Une pareille*. ⁸ *Quantité*. ⁹ Translate: *It is evident from facts that . . .* and see Ex. XVI. Note ⁷. ¹⁰ *De*. ¹¹ The subject being very long, put the verb first. ¹² *Sujet*. ¹³ *Théorie, conjecture*.

XXIV.—CHARACTER OF HANNIBAL.

Hannibal, this extraordinary man, had been made¹ the sworn foe of Rome, almost from² his infancy; for³ while⁴ yet very young, his father brought him⁵ before⁶ the altar, and obliged him⁶ to take an oath,⁷ that he would never be in friendship⁸ with the Romans, nor⁹ desist from opposing¹⁰ their power, till¹¹ he or they should be no more.¹² On¹³ his first appearance¹⁴ in¹⁵ the field, he united, in his own* person, the masterly method of commanding, with the most perfect obedience to his superiors.

Thus he was equally beloved by¹⁶ his generals, and the troops he was appointed to lead. He was possessed¹⁷ of the greatest courage in¹⁸ opposing danger, and the greatest presence of mind in retiring from it.¹⁹ No fatigue was able to subdue his body, nor²⁰ any misfortune to break his spirit; he was²¹ equally patient of heat and cold, and he took²² sustenance merely to²³ content nature, not to²³ delight his appetite. He²⁴ was the best horseman and the swiftest runner of the time, and considered²⁵ as the most skilful commander²⁶ of antiquity.—GOLDSMITH.

See Ex. III. Note 1. ² *Depuis*. ³ *For*, preposition=*pour*; for (conj.)=*car*. ⁴ Translate: *while he was yet very young*. ⁵ See Ex. I. Note 3. ⁶ See Ex. XIX. Note 9. ⁷ *To take an oath*=*jur*, *prêter serment*, *faire serment* (*de*). ⁸ Translate: *the friend of*. ⁹ Turn: *and that he would never desist*. ¹⁰ *Combattre*, *s'opposer à*. ¹¹ *Jusqu'à ce que*, with the subjunctive, when a conjunction; *till* is *jusqu'à*, when a preposition. ¹² See Ex. XXII. Note 10. ¹³ *à*. ¹⁴ *Apparition*. ¹⁵ *Sur le champ de bataille*. ¹⁶ After a passive verb, *by* or *with* is translated by *de*, when the verb expresses an action wholly of the mind, and by *par*, when the bodily faculties participate in the action. Ex.: *I am loved by my parents*, *je suis aimé de mes parents*; *he was struck by lightning*, *il fut frappé par la foudre*. ¹⁷ *To be possessed of*=*posséder*. ¹⁸ *In opposing danger*=*en faisant face au danger*, *en face du danger*. ¹⁹ From it=*en*, pronoun following the rule. Ex. I. Note 3. ²⁰ Turn: *no misfortune could break his spirit*. ²¹ *To be patient of*=*être capable d'endurer*. ²² He used to take (the imperfect indicative). ²³ See Ex. II. Note 4. ²⁴ See Ex. XIII. Note 14. ²⁵ Translate *He was considered*. ²⁶ *Général*, *capitaine*.

XXV.—TALLEYRAND AND BONAPARTE.

Talleyrand and Bonaparte never liked each other.¹ The former² was at³ Madame Crawford's house in⁴ Paris, when some one came in⁵ and announced the death of Bonaparte. It⁶ made a sort of sensation in the room, and Madame Crawford exclaimed: 'What an⁷ event!' Talleyrand was sitting⁸ in a corner near by,⁹ and very

quietly¹⁰ replied: 'It¹¹ is no longer¹² an event, it¹¹ is a piece¹³ of news.'

¹ *Each other, one another*=*l'un l'autre* (speaking of two persons), *les uns les autres* (speaking of more than two persons). Besides, the verb must be used reflexively. ² *The former*=*celui-là*; *the latter*=*celui-ci*. ³ See Ex. XIII. Note ¹⁷. ⁴ See Ex. XVIII. Note ². ⁵ *To come in*=*entrer*. ⁶ *Cela*. ⁷ In exclamative sentences *what* *a* is simply *quel*. ⁸ *To be sitting*=*être assis*. ⁹ *Near by*=*tout près de là*. ¹⁰ See Ex. I. Note ². ¹¹ See Ex. XIII. Note ¹⁴. ¹² See Ex. XXII. Note ¹⁰. ¹³ *A piece of news*=*une nouvelle*. *Nouvelle* is used in the plural for more than one piece of news.

XXVI.—PETER THE GREAT AND THE LAWYERS.

Peter the Great, being at Westminster Hall in term-time,¹ and seeing multitudes of people² swarming about³ the courts of law, asked⁴ one of the persons⁵ near him: 'who⁶ all these busy people were, and what they were about.'⁷ Being answered⁸ that they⁹ were lawyers,—'Lawyers!' returned he with great vivacity, 'why,¹⁰ I have but¹¹ four in my whole kingdom, and I intend hanging¹² two of them¹³ as soon as I return¹⁴ home.'¹⁵

¹ *In term-time*=*au moment où siégeaient les tribunaux*. ² *People*=*gens, personnes*. *People* is translated by *peuple*, when meaning *nation, or mob*. ³ *Dans les cours de justice*. ⁴ See Ex. XIII. Note ¹². ⁵ Translate: *of the persons who were near him*. ⁶ *Who were, etc.* ⁷ *What they were about*=*ce qu'ils faisaient*. ⁸ See Ex. III. Note ¹. ⁹ See Ex. XIII. Note ¹⁴. ¹⁰ *Mais*. ¹¹ *But; only*=*ne . . . que; ne* before the verb and *que* after it. *Four (of them)*. ¹² *I intend hanging*=*j'ai l'intention de pendre*; but here the verb *Faire* should be used, because Peter would not hang the lawyers himself, he would have them hanged. Say *j'ai l'intention de faire pendre*. ¹³ *Of them*=*en*, before the verb. ¹⁴ When a future action is implied, the future tense must be used. Ex.: *as soon as I return, when I return; aussitôt que je serai de retour, quand je serai de retour*. ¹⁵ *Dans mon pays*. *Chez moi* would mean *in my house or in the part of the country I come from*.

XXVII.—HOGG AND LORD BACON.

As Lord Bacon, on¹ one occasion, was about² to pass sentence of death³ upon a man of the name of Hogg, who had just⁴ been tried for a long career of crime, the prisoner suddenly⁵ claimed to be heard in arrest⁶ of judgment, saying, with an expression of arch confidence as⁷ he addressed the bench: 'I claim indulgence, my lord, on the plea⁸ of relationship; for⁹ I am convinced your lordship will never be unnatural enough¹⁰ to hang one of your own family.'

'Indeed,' replied the judge, with some amazement, 'I was not aware that¹¹ I had the honour of your alliance; perhaps you¹² will be good enough¹⁰ to name the degree of our mutual affinity.'

'I am sorry, my lord,' returned the impudent thief, 'I¹³ cannot trace the links of consanguinity; but the moral evidence is sufficiently pertinent. My name, my lord, is Hogg, your lordship's¹⁴ is Bacon, and all the world will allow that bacon and hog are very closely allied.'

'I am sorry,' replied his lordship, 'I¹³ cannot admit the truth of your instance; hog cannot be bacon till¹⁵ it is hanged; and so,¹⁶ before¹⁷ I can admit your plea, or acknowledge the family compact, Hogg must be hanged to-morrow morning.'

¹ Dans. ² To be about to=*aller, être sur le point de*. ³ To pass sentence of death on=*prononcer la sentence de mort de*. ⁴ See Ex. IV. Note 4. ⁵ See Ex. I. Note 2. ⁶ Claimed to be heard in arrest of judgment=*demandà à être entendu, qu'il fût sursis à l'exécution de son jugement*. ⁷ As he addressed=*en s'adressant à*. ⁸ On the plea of relationship=*à cause de notre parenté*. ⁹ See Ex. XXIV. Note 3. ¹⁰ Enough . . . to=*assez . . . pour*. Besides, see Ex. XIV. Note 13. ¹¹ That I had the honour must be translated by *avoir l'honneur*, because the verb of this subordinate sentence is in the same person as the verb in the principal sentence, and must therefore be written in the infinitive mood. ¹² After *peut-être, aussi*,

toujours, and *encore*, the subject is placed after the verb, when these adverbs are at the beginning of the sentence. Ex.: *perhaps he will come*=*peut-être viendra-t-il*. ¹³ *I cannot*, depending on *I am sorry*, ought to be written in the subjunctive mood, see Ex. VII. Rule ⁴. But, *I cannot* is in the same person as *I am sorry*, see Note ¹¹ above, so it must be written in the infinitive. ¹⁴ Translate: *that of your lordship*. ¹⁵ See Ex. XXIV. Note ¹¹. ¹⁶ *Aussi*, see Note ¹² above. ¹⁷ See Ex. XIX. Note ⁹. Here, *before* should be translated by *avant de*, followed by the infinitive, on account of the rule given above ¹¹.

XXVIII.—FLEMISH LUXURY.

When the burgomasters of Ghent, Bruges, and Ypres went to Paris to ¹ pay ² homage to King ³ John, in 1351, they were received with great pomp and distinction; but, being ⁴ invited to a festival, they observed that their seats at table were not furnished with ⁵ cushions; whereupon, ⁶ to ¹ make known ⁷ their displeasure at this want ⁸ of regard to ⁹ their dignity, they folded their richly embroidered cloaks and seated themselves upon ¹⁰ them. On ¹¹ rising from table, they left their cloaks behind them, ¹² and, being informed ¹³ of their apparent forgetfulness, Simon van Eertrycke, burgomaster of Bruges, replied: 'We Flemings are ¹⁴ not in the habit of ¹⁵ carrying away ¹⁶ our cushions after dinner.'—LONGFELLOW.

¹ See Ex. II. Note ⁵. ² To pay homage=*rendre hommage*. ³ See Ex. I. Note ⁵. ⁴ Turn into *having been invited*. ⁵ See Ex. XII. Note ⁹. ⁶ *Sur quoi*. ⁷ The verb *faire* requires the following verb to be in the infinitive (causative mood). ⁸ *Manque*. ⁹ *To* is translated by *pour* or *envers*, after an adjective or a noun expressing a feeling. Ex.: *You are kind to me*=*vous êtes bon pour moi*. ¹⁰ Personal pronouns are not used after prepositions, when referring to things. An adverb must be used. *Upon them*, here, should be translated by *dessus*. ¹¹ Translate: *when they rose*. ¹² Here *them* can be translated after the preposition, because that personal pronoun refers to persons. Besides, see Ex. XIII. Note ³. ¹³ See Ex. III. Note ¹. ¹⁴ *We* must be repeated before the verb. ¹⁵ *To be in the habit of*=*avoir l'habitude de*. ¹⁶ *To carry away*=*emporter*.

XXIX.—JASMIN, BARBER.

Jasmin, the author of *The Blind Girl of Castèl-Cuillè*, is to the south of France what¹ Burns is to the south of Scotland,—the representative of the heart of the people,²—one of those happy bards with³ their mouths full of birds (*la bouco pleno d'acuzelous*). He has written his own biography in⁴ a poetic form, and the simple⁵ narrative of his poverty, his struggles and his triumphs, is very touching. Jasmin *coiffeur*, still⁶ lives at Agen, on the Garonne; and long⁷ may he live there⁸ to⁹ delight his native land with¹⁰ native songs. —LONGFELLOW.

¹ *What (that which)*=*ce qui*, nominative, *ce que*, accusative. ² See Ex. XXVI. Note ². ³ *With their mouths full of birds*, that is to say *having their mouths*, etc. *With* is not translated in such a sentence (ablative absolute), and the article is used instead of the possessive adjective. Literally: *the mouth full of birds*. (See the *provençal* sentence which follows.) ⁴ *In a poetic form*=*en vers*. ⁵ Put *simple* after the noun, in order to give that adjective its literal meaning. Note.—Adjectives, used in French both literally and figuratively, are placed after the noun when used literally, and before it when used figuratively. ⁶ See Ex. I. Note ². ⁷ *Long may he live*!=*puisse-t-il vivre longtemps*! ⁸ *There*, adverb, is *là*, where referring to a place pointed at. If *there* refers to a place named before, it is translated by the pronoun *y*, which must be placed before the verb. ⁹ See Ex. II. Note ⁵. ¹⁰ See Ex. XII. Note ⁹.

XXX.—THE BLOODY BATTLE OF THE SPURS OF GOLD.

This battle, the most memorable in¹ Flemish history, was fought² under the walls of Courtray, on³ the 11th⁴ of⁵ July 1302, between the French and the Flemings, the former⁶ commanded by⁷ Robert, Comte d'Artois, and the latter by Guillaume de Juliers, and Jean, Comte de Namur. The French army was completely⁸ routed, with a loss of twenty thousand infantry⁹ and seven

thousand cavalry,⁹ among whom¹⁰ were sixty-three princes, dukes, and counts, seven hundred¹¹ lords banneret, and eleven hundred¹¹ noblemen. The flower of the French nobility perished on¹² that day; to which¹³ history has given the name of the '*Journée des Éperons d'Or*,' from¹⁴ the great number of golden spurs found on the field of battle. Seven hundred¹¹ of them¹⁵ were hung up as a¹⁶ trophy in the church of *Notre Dame de Courtray*; and, as the cavaliers of that day wore but¹⁷ a single¹⁸ spur each, these¹⁹ vouched²⁰ to God for the violent²¹ and bloody death of seven hundred¹¹ of his creatures.—LONGFELLOW.

¹ See Ex. I. Note ⁶. ² *To fight a battle*=*livrer une bataille*. Besides, see Ex. III. Note ⁹. ³ *On* is not translated in dates. ⁴ The French use the cardinal numbers in mentioning all the days of the month, except the *first*. ⁵ *Of* is omitted before the name of the month. ⁶ See Ex. XXV. Note ². ⁷ See Ex. XXIV. Note ¹⁶. ⁸ See Ex. XI. Note ⁸. ⁹ *Supply soldiers of*. ¹⁰ *Among whom*=*parmi lesquels*. ¹¹ See Ex. V. Note ⁶. ¹² *On that day*=*ce jour-là* (that particular day). ¹³ Translate: *history has given to that day*, etc. In this sentence, *day* should be translated by *journée*. ¹⁴ *à cause de*. ¹⁵ *Seven hundred of them were hung up*. . . . Use the active form with *on* and translate *of them* by the pronoun *en*, which must be placed before the verb. ¹⁶ *As a trophy*=*en trophée*. ¹⁷ See Ex. XXVI. Note ¹¹. ¹⁸ *Seul*, after a noun, means *alone*: before a noun, it means *single*. See Ex. XXIX. Note ⁵. ¹⁹ *Turn, these spurs*. ²⁰ *Vouched to God for the violent . . . death*=*attestèrent devant Dieu la mort*, etc. ²¹ See Ex. XI. Note ³.

XXXI.—THE FIGHT AT MINNEWATER.

When the inhabitants of Bruges were digging a canal at Minnewater to¹ bring the waters of the Lys from Deynze to their city, they were² attacked and routed by³ the citizens of Ghent, whose⁴ commerce would have been much injured by the canal. They were led by³ Jean Lyons, captain of a military company at Ghent, called the '*chaperons blancs*.' He had⁵ great sway over the turbulent populace, who, in those prosperous

times of the city, gained⁶ an easy livelihood by labouring two or three days in the week,⁷ and had⁸ the remaining⁸ four or five to devote⁹ to public affairs. The fight at Minnewater was followed by open rebellion against Louis de Maele, the Count of Flanders and Protector of Bruges. His superb château of Wondeighem was pillaged and burnt, and the insurgents forced the gates of Bruges, and entered in triumph, with¹⁰ Lyons at their head.—LONGFELLOW.

¹ See Ex. II. Note ⁵. ² Perfect indicative (narrative). ³ See Ex. XXIV. Note ¹⁶. ⁴ See Ex. III. Note ⁸. ⁵ Imperfect indicative (*He had at the time the narrative took place*). ⁶ Imperfect indicative (*was gaining*). ⁷ *Dans la semaine, or par semaine (a week)*. ⁸ *The remaining four or five = Les quatre ou cinq jours qui restaient*. ⁹ *Consacrer*. ¹⁰ *With* is not to be translated (ablative absolute).

XXXII.—CARACCIOLI.

Caraccioli was hanged at the fore-yard-arm¹ of the Sicilian frigate *La Minerva*. The body was carried out² to a considerable distance, and sunk in the bay, with three double-headed³ shot,⁴ weighing 250⁵ pounds, tied to its⁶ legs. Between two and three weeks afterwards, when the king was on board⁷ the *Foudroyant*, a Neapolitan fisherman came to the ship, and solemnly⁸ declared that Caraccioli had risen⁹ from the bottom of the sea, and was coming, as fast as he could, to Naples, swimming half out of¹⁰ the water. Such an account was listened to¹¹ like a tale of idle credulity. The day being fair, Nelson, to¹² please the king, stood out¹³ to sea; but the ship had not proceeded¹⁴ far before¹⁵ a body was¹⁶ distinctly seen, upright in the water, and approaching them.¹⁷ It¹⁸ was soon recognised to be, indeed, the corpse of Caraccioli, which had risen⁹ and floated, while the weights attached to

the legs kept¹⁹ the body in a position²⁰ like that of a living man. A fact so extraordinary astonished the king, and perhaps excited some feeling of superstitious fear, akin to regret. He gave permission²¹ for the body to be taken on shore, and receive Christian burial.—*Life of Nelson*, by DR. SOUTHEY.

¹ *Fore-yard-arm*=*taquet de devant*. ² *To carry out, away*=*emporter*. ³ *à deux-têtes*. ⁴ *Boulets*. ⁵ See Ex. V. Note ⁶. ⁶ The possessive adjectives *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs*, are not used, when the possessor is not a noun of person or of personified thing. *Le, la, les*, when possible, are generally used, with *en* (of it, . . .), before the verb. *That tree is fine, I admire its leaves*, will be in French: *cet arbre est beau, j'EN admire LES feuilles*. In the above, translate *to its legs*, by *aux jambes*. ⁷ *On board*=*à bord*. ⁸ See Ex. I. Note ². ⁹ See Ex. IX. Note ¹¹. ¹⁰ *Au-dessus de la surface de*. ¹¹ *To listen*=*écouter* (active). See Ex. III. Note ¹. ¹² See Ex. II. Note ⁶. ¹³ *To stand out* (mar.)=*aller, porter au large*. ¹⁴ *S'avancer, aller, se rendre* (with *à*). ¹⁵ *Quand*, with the indicative mood. ¹⁶ See Ex. III. Note ¹. ¹⁷ *Venant dans la direction du navire, or qui s'approchait d'eux*. ¹⁸ See Ex. III. Note ¹, Ex. I. Note ², and Ex. XIII. Note ¹⁴. ¹⁹ *Tenir*. ²⁰ *Dans la position d'un homme vivant*. ²¹ *Il permit qu'on . . .* with the subjunctive, see Ex. III. Note ¹.

XXXIII.—WILLIAM, PRINCE OF ORANGE.

He was now¹ in his thirty-seventh year. But both* in body² and in mind he was older than other men of the same age. Indeed it might be said³ that he had never been young. His external appearance is almost as well known to us⁴ as to his own captains and counsellors. Sculptors, painters, and medallists exerted their utmost skill in the work⁵ of transmitting his features to posterity; and his features were such⁶ as no artist could⁷ fail⁸ to seize, and⁹ such as, once seen, could never be forgotten. His name at once¹⁰ calls up¹¹ before us a slender¹² and feeble frame,¹³ a lofty and ample¹³ forehead, a nose curved like the beak of an eagle, an eye rivalling¹⁴ that of an eagle in¹⁵ brightness and keenness, a

thoughtful¹² and somewhat sullen brow, a firm¹³ and somewhat peevish mouth, a cheek pale, thin, and deeply furrowed¹⁶ by sickness and by care. That pensive,¹² severe, and solemn aspect could⁷ scarcely have belonged to a happy¹⁷ or a good-humoured man. But it indicates in¹⁷ a manner not¹⁸ to be mistaken, capacity equal¹⁹ to the most arduous enterprises, and fortitude not²⁰ to be shaken²¹ by reverses or dangers.—MACAULAY.

¹ Now is *alors*, in past time. ² *De corps*. ³ Translate: *one might say* according to Ex. III. Note ¹, *might* will be here *pourrait* (*would be able*), not *pouvait* (*was able*). When *could* or *might* have to be translated, the verb *to be able* should be referred to; the conditional or the past indicative of *pouvoir* must be used, according as the conditional or the past indicative of *to be able* should have to be used. ⁴ See Ex. III. Note ⁴. *As well . . . as*=*aussi bien . . . que*. ⁵ *Dans le travail qui devait transmettre*. ⁶ *Such as*=*tel que*. ⁷ See Remark ³ above. ⁸ *To fail to*=*manquer de*. ⁹ *Et tels que personne ne pouvait les oublier, après les avoir vus une fois*. ¹⁰ *At once*=*sur-le-champ, immédiatement*, see Ex. I. Note ². ¹¹ *Calls up before us*=*nous rappelle*. ¹² See Ex. XI. Note ³. ¹³ *Frame* (human)=*corps*. ¹⁴ *To rival some one in something*=*rivaliser de q. ch. avec quelqu'un*. ¹⁵ *De*, according to the preceding remark. ¹⁶ *Furrowed*=*ridé, sillonné de rides*. ¹⁷ *In a manner*=*d'une manière*. ¹⁸ *Not to be mistaken*=*frappante*. ¹⁹ *Equal to*=*à la hauteur de, or suffisante pour exécuter*. ²⁰ Translate: *fortitude which neither reverses nor dangers could shake*. See Note ³ above. *Neither . . . nor*=*ni . . . ni*, with *ne* before the verb. ²¹ *To shake*=*ébranler*.

XXXIV.—LOUIS XIV.¹

The personal qualities of the French king added to² the respect inspired by the power and importance of his kingdom. No³ sovereign has ever represented the majesty of a great state with more⁴ dignity and grace. He was his own prime⁵ minister, and performed⁶ the duties of a prime minister with an ability and an industry which could⁷ not be reasonably expected from one⁸ who had in infancy succeeded to a crown, and who had been surrounded by flatterers before⁹ he

could speak. He had shown, in¹⁰ an eminent degree, two talents invaluable to¹¹ a prince, the talent of¹² choosing his servants well,¹³ and the talent of¹² appropriating to himself¹⁴ the chief part of the credit¹⁵ of their acts. In his dealings with¹⁶ foreign powers, he had some generosity, but no justice. His perfidy and violence, however, excited less enmity than the insolence with which he constantly reminded¹⁷ his neighbours of his own greatness and of their littleness. He did not at this time¹⁸ profess the austere devotion which, at a later period,¹⁹ gave to his court the aspect of a monastery. On the contrary,²⁰ he was as²¹ licentious, though by no means²² as frivolous and indolent, as his brother of England.—MACAULAY.

¹ See Ex. I. Note ¹. ² To add to=*accroître, augmenter*. ³ No=*nul, aucun*, with *ne* before the verb. ⁴ See Rule in Ex. XI. Note ¹⁷. ⁵ Prime minister=*Premier ministre*. ⁶ To perform the duties=*remplir les fonctions*. ⁷ See Ex. XXXIII. Note ³. ⁸ From one=*d'un roi*. ⁹ Translate: *before being able to speak*. See Ex. XIX. Note ⁹, and Ex. IV. Note ². ¹⁰ In an eminent degree=*au plus haut degré*. ¹¹ Pour, chez. ¹² See Ex. IV. Note ². ¹³ See Ex. I. Note ². Remark.—A short adverb can be placed between the preposition and the infinitive which follows. ¹⁴ See Ex. I. Note ³. ¹⁵ Credit=*honneur*. ¹⁶ In his dealings with=*dans sa conduite à l'égard de*. ¹⁷ To remind some one of something=*rappeler quelque chose à quelqu'un*. ¹⁸ At this time=*alors*. ¹⁹ At a later period=*à une époque plus avancée*. ²⁰ On the contrary=*au contraire*. ²¹ As . . . as=*aussi . . . que*. ²² By no means=*nullement*. This sentence should be the following one translated word for word: *He was as licentious as his brother of England, though he was by no means as frivolous and as indolent*. Though=*bien que, quoique*, with the subjunctive. The sentence being negative (*by no means*), *ne* must precede the verb.

XXXV.—DEATH OF LUXEMBOURG.

A few¹ hours after² William had lost the most tender and beloved of all his friends (Mary), he was delivered from the most formidable of all his enemies. Death had been busy at³ Paris as well as in³ London. While Tenison was praying by

the bed⁴ of Mary, Bourdaloue was administering the last unction⁵ to Luxembourg. The great French general had never been a favourite at the French court: but when it was known⁶ that his feeble frame,⁷ exhausted by war and pleasure, was sinking under a dangerous disease, the value of his services was for the first time⁸ fully appreciated. The royal physicians were sent⁹ to prescribe⁹ for him. The sisters of Saint Cyr were ordered⁶ to pray for him: but prayers and prescriptions were vain. 'How¹⁰ glad the Prince of Orange will be,' said Lewis, 'when the news¹¹ of our loss reaches¹² him.'¹³ He was mistaken.¹⁴ That news¹¹ found William unable to think of¹⁵ any loss but¹⁶ his own.—MACAULAY.

¹ See Ex. XXI. Note ². ² *After*=*après*, when a preposition; *après que*, when a conjunction; *ensuite*, when used as an adverb. ³ See Ex. XVIII. Note ². ⁴ *By the bed*=*au chevet*. ⁵ *The last unction*=*l'extrême-onction* or *les derniers sacrements*. ⁶ See Ex. III. Note ¹, and Ex. V. Note ¹⁰. ⁷ See Ex. XXXIII. Note ¹³. ⁸ *Fois* (tem.), *once*, *twice*, *three times*, etc.=*une fois*, *deux fois*, *trois fois*, etc. *Sometimes*=*quelquefois*, *parfois*. ⁹ *To prescribe* (active)=*prescrire*, *ordonner*. *To prescribe* (neuter)=*faire une ordonnance*. *To prescribe for some one*=*voir un malade*, *donner ses soins à quelqu'un*. ¹⁰ *How*, followed by an adjective, in exclamative sentences, is translated by *que*, followed by the subject of the sentence. ¹¹ See Ex. XXV. Note ¹³. ¹² *To reach* (active)=*arriver à*. Besides, Ex. XXVI. Note ¹⁴. ¹³ See Ex. I. Note ³. ¹⁴ *To be mistaken*=*se tromper*. ¹⁵ See Ex. III. Note ². ¹⁶ *Excepté*.

XXXVI.—WHEN¹ TO SEE A COUNTRY.

To² see a country at its best,³ and in its most essential aspect, it is held⁴ that the traveller should⁵ visit it at the time⁶ of the year which best⁷ brings out⁸ its characteristics. No one⁹ would¹⁰ go to St. Petersburg except in winter, when the Russian capital is most truly herself,¹¹ when moujiks die of cold, and *¹² furs are a necessary of life, and¹² Russian punch is a needful

alcoholic defence against the frosty air. Spain should¹³ be seen in summer, when the natives may feel inclined to curse the sun, like a certain African tribe, because he burns their plains to that fulvous tint in which no green thing lives. When there is not a glass of water in the Manzanares is the moment to see Madrid. The Highlands,¹⁴ again, should¹³ be visited when autumn touches the bracken with¹⁵ gold. In the same way,¹⁶ and by parity¹⁷ of reasoning, the Parisians who would¹⁰ see fair London aright, and look on¹⁸ her when she is most herself,¹⁰ should¹³ come to her¹⁹ during the prevalence of a good steady²⁰ east wind.—*Daily News*, May 5, 1877.

¹ *Le moment propice pour voir un pays.* ² See Ex. II. Note 5. ³ *à son avantage.* ⁴ *To hold=prétendre, maintenir, soutenir.* See Ex. III. Note 1. ⁵ *Should, ought to=doit.* ⁶ *Époque* (fem.). ⁷ *Best* (adj.)=*le meilleur*; *best* (adv.)=*le mieux.* See Ex. I. Note 2. ⁸ *Montrer, mettre en évidence.* ⁹ *No one=personne* with *ne* before the verb. ¹⁰ When a stress is laid on the verb *will, would*, the verb *vouloir* must be used, not the future or conditional of the verb which follows *will* or *would*. ¹¹ *Bien vraiment elle-même.* ¹² See Ex. XVII. Note 5. ¹³ See above Note 5, and Ex. III. Note 1. ¹⁴ *The Highlands=les montagnes d'Écosse.* ¹⁵ See Ex. XII. Note 9. ¹⁶ *In the same way=de même.* ¹⁷ *En raisonnant de la même manière.* ¹⁸ *Voir.* ¹⁹ *To her* should be translated by *y*. See Ex. XXIX. Note 8. ²⁰ *Opiniâtre.*

XXXVII.—VICTOR HUGO.

It¹ is a little strange to² reflect³ that France still possesses her greatest poet, and that, in his great age, his lyric force is not abated. Yet it¹ will probably be allowed⁴ by foreigners, if not by Frenchmen, that Victor Hugo is the greatest name in⁵ the roll of French literary worthies. Other countries must look back⁶ to some distant time to⁷ find the singer whom they chiefly delight⁸ to honour. England possesses in⁹ Shakespeare a poet whose¹⁰ place seems set above¹¹ the reach¹²

of mortal ambition. Each generation has its favourites, whom new generations may accept or reject, but Shakespeare is always outside the risk of rivalry. In¹³ Germany, a more recently developed¹⁴ literature finds her chief triumph in the plays and poems of Goethe, and in his far-reaching¹⁵ and tranquil knowledge of men and things. In Italy no fifth name¹⁶ has for¹⁷ centuries been added¹⁸ to those of the four chief poets, and among them Dante holds the chief place, unchallenged and unapproached. But France has waited till¹⁹ this century for* her poet of widest range,²⁰ of most musical tongue, a 'mighty-voiced'²¹ inventor of harmonies.'—*Daily News*, Feb. 27, 1877.

¹ See Ex. XVI. Note 7. ² *De*. ³ *Penser*. ⁴ *Admis*. ⁵ See Ex. I. Note 6. ⁶ *To look back to some distant time=reporter sa pensée, se reporter à une époque éloignée*. ⁷ See Ex. II. Note 5. ⁸ *To delight to=se plaire à*. ⁹ *En*. ¹⁰ See Ex. III. Note 8. ¹¹ *Au-dessus de*. ¹² *Portée* (fem.). ¹³ See Ex. XVIII. Note 2. ¹⁴ Long adjectives in the comparative always follow the noun. ¹⁵ *Far-reaching=profond*. See Ex. XI. Note 3. ¹⁶ *Aucun nom*. ¹⁷ *For* (preposition, referring to time) is *depuis*, when meaning *since*, and *pendant*, when meaning *during*. In this case it is never *pour*. ¹⁸ See Ex. V. Note 3. ¹⁹ See Ex. XXIV. Note 11. ²⁰ *Of widest range=à l'imagination la plus étendue*. ²¹ *Mighty-voiced=à la voix puissante*.

XXXVIII.—LORD WELLINGTON TO GENERAL¹ FREYRE.

The question² between these gentlemen and myself, is whether they shall or shall not pillage; and I have been obliged to adopt severe measures against the troops of General Morillo. I am sorry that these measures are displeasing³ to the gentlemen; but the acts of which I complain⁴ are much more dishonourable⁵ to⁶ them than the measures that they have rendered⁷ necessary . . .

General¹ Morillo has himself said to General¹

Hill that it⁸ was impossible to prevent the mischief; that there was not a single soldier in the Spanish army who⁹ had¹⁰ not¹¹ received¹² letters¹³ from his family in which they were enjoined¹⁴ to take advantage¹⁵ of the occasion and fill their pockets in France.

¹ See Ex. I. Note ⁴. ² *The question . . . whether*=*la question . . . de savoir si*. ³ See Ex. VII. Rule ⁴. ⁴ *To complain*=*se plaindre*. *To pity*=*plaindre*. ⁵ *Dishonourable*=*déshonorant*. ⁶ See Ex. XXVIII. Note ⁹. ⁷ See Ex. III. Note ³. ⁸ See Ex. XVI. Note ⁷. ⁹ See Ex. VII. Rule ². ¹⁰ Rule.—The subjunctive mood is used after the relative pronouns *qui*, *que*, *dont*, *où*, etc., when they are preceded by *pas de*, *peu de*, *LE SEUL*, *l'unique*, *le premier*, *le dernier*, or by an adjective in the superlative relative degree. ¹¹ *Not* is translated by *ne* only in a negative subordinate sentence depending on another negative sentence. ¹² Past participles, used with the auxiliary *avoir*, do not agree with their direct objects, when the direct objects come after the past participles. ¹³ In negative sentences, the partitive article is *de* for masculine or feminine, singular or plural. ¹⁴ *To enjoin*=*enjoindre*. See Ex. III. Note ¹. ¹⁵ *To take advantage of*, *to avail oneself of*, *to profit by*=*profiter de*.

XXXIX.—DIFFICULTY AND IMPOSSIBILITY.

Dr.¹ Johnson was observed² by a musical friend of his³ to be very inattentive at a concert while a celebrated solo-player⁴ was giving an extraordinary performance upon his violin. His friend, to⁵ induce him to take⁶ greater notice of what⁷ was going on,⁸ told him how⁹ extremely difficult it was. 'Difficult, do you call it, sir?' replied the doctor; 'I wish¹⁰ it were impossible.'

¹ See Ex. I. Note ⁵. ² Use the active form. ³ Translate, *one of his friends*. ⁴ Literally translate, *while a celebrated artiste was playing an extraordinary solo upon the violin*. ⁵ See Ex. II. Note ⁵. ⁶ *To take notice of*=*faire attention à*. ⁷ *What* (that which)=*ce qui* (nom.), *ce que* (accus.). ⁸ *To be going on*=*se passer*. ⁹ *How*, before an adjective, is translated by *combien*, followed by the subject of the sentence, and by *que*, in exclamative sentences, also followed by the subject. See Ex. XXXV. Note ¹⁰. ¹⁰ Use the conditional of the verb *vouloir*, followed by the subjunctive; whenever *I wish* means *I should like*.

XL.—WHAT TO TAKE.

An old gentleman, who frequented one of the coffee-houses,¹ being unwell, determined to make free² with the professional men who attended³ occasionally, and steal an opinion on his case. Accordingly, seated perchance in the same box⁴ with one⁵ of the faculty, he inquired⁶ what⁷ he should⁸ take for such a complaint, naming his own. 'I will⁹ tell you,' replied the doctor sarcastically, 'you should take advice.'¹⁰

¹ Coffee-house=café. ² To make free with=agir sans façon avec. ³ Qui venaient. ⁴ Cabinet. ⁵ Un membre. ⁶ Demander. ⁷ See Ex. XXXIX. Note 7. ⁸ Should, ought to=devait. Translate take by faire. ⁹ Literally, I will say it to you. When will expresses an action that is to take place at once, the verb aller is used. Translate therefore, I am going to say it to you. ¹⁰ You should take advice (med.)= Vous devriez consulter un médecin.

XLI.—A PRESCRIPTION.

A physician, after¹ listening with torture to a pressing account of 'symptoms' from a lady, who ailed² so little³ that she was going to the opera that⁴ evening, happily⁵ escaped from the room, when he was⁶ urgently requested to step⁷ up-stairs again; it⁸ was to⁹ ask him whether she might¹⁰ eat some oysters. 'Yes, Madam,' said the physician, 'shells and all.'

¹ Translate, after having listened, and see Ex. IV. Note 2, and Ex. XXXII. Note 11. ² Souffrir. ³ Little is petit, when an adjective, and peu, when an adverb. ⁴ That evening, that particular evening you speak of, ce soir-là. ⁵ See Ex. I. Note 2. ⁶ See Ex. III. Note 1, and Ex. XI. Note 8. ⁷ To step up-stairs again=remonter. ⁸ See Ex. XVI. Note 7. ⁹ See Ex. II. Note 4. ¹⁰ See Ex. XXXIII. Note 3.

XLII.—A DISSENTER.

The other day a gentleman entered¹ an hotel in² Glasgow, and finding that the person who

appeared to act as waiter could³ not give him certain information which he wanted, put⁴ the question: 'Do you belong to the establishment?' to which⁵ Jeames replied: 'No, sir, I belong to the Free Kirk.'

¹ To enter=entrer dans. ² See Ex. XVIII. Note ². ³ See Ex. XXXIII. Note ³. ⁴ To put a question=poser, faire une question. ⁵ Which (pron.) after a preposition is quot.

XLIII.—MURDER AND ASSAULT.

'You murder¹ time,'² said the leader of the band³ at Drury Lane to Mr. Kemble, who was rehearsing a song in *Richard Cœur de Lion*. 'Well, if I do,'⁴ replied the tragedian, 'I am more merciful than you, who are continually beating it.'

¹ Massacrer. ² Time (music)=mesure (fem.). ³ Leader of the band=chef d'orchestre. ⁴ Translate: if I murder it.

XLIV.—IN GOING.

A merry fellow¹ one evening² told³ one of his bottle companions that he intended⁴ to leave the sum of £20 to⁵ be spent at his funeral. His companion asked whether the said money was to⁶ be spent in⁷ going or returning, and was⁸ answered: 'Going,'⁹ to be sure;¹⁰ for¹¹ when¹² you return,¹³ I shall not be with you.'

¹ Bon vivant. ² See Ex. I. Note ². ³ Said to. ⁴ To intend=avoir l'intention de. ⁵ See Ex. II. Note ⁵. ⁶ Was to=devait. See Ex. XVII. Note ⁸. ⁷ In going, whilst going=en allant. ⁸ See Ex. III. Note ¹. ⁹ Translate, in going, and see Note ⁷ above. ¹⁰ To be sure=assurément. ¹¹ See Ex. XXIV. Note ³. ¹² See Ex. XXVI. Note ¹⁴. ¹³ To return is retourner, when meaning to go back, and revenir, when meaning to come back.

XLV.—IDIOTS.

A journalist tells¹ the following²: 'I have picked up a little story which I think too good to be³ lost as a* reproof for disturbers of the peace in churches. A certain dissenting minister was preaching in my neighbourhood and was much⁴ annoyed by persons talking and giggling. He paused, looked at⁵ the disturbers, and said: 'I am⁶ always afraid to reprove those who misbehave in chapel. In the early⁷ part of my ministry I made a great mistake. As I was preaching, a young man who sat⁸ before⁹ me¹⁰ was constantly laughing, talking, and making grimaces. I paused, and administered a severe rebuke. After the close of the service one of the official members came¹¹ and said to me: "Sir, you made a great mistake. That young man whom you reproved is an¹² idiot." Since then¹³ I have always been afraid to reprove those who misbehave themselves in chapels, lest¹⁴ I should repeat that mistake, and reprove another idiot.' During the rest of that service at least there was good order.'

¹ *Raconter*. ² Translate *the following anecdote*. ³ Take the active form with *on*, and the conjunction *pour que*, which governs the subjunctive. ⁴ *Much*, before a past participle, is translated by *très, fort, bien*; never by *beaucoup*. ⁵ *To look at*=*regarder*. ⁶ *To be afraid to*=*avoir peur de, craindre de*. ⁷ *Dans les premières années*. ⁸ *était assis or se trouvait assis*. ⁹ See Ex. XIX. Note ⁹. ¹⁰ See Ex. XIII. Note ³. ¹¹ *To go to some one, to come to some one* (for a purpose)=*aller, venir trouver quelqu'un*. *Came* will be translated here by *vint me trouver*. ¹² When a noun is used adjectively the indefinite article is not translated. Ex.: *I am a soldier*=*je suis soldat*. ¹³ *Since then*=*depuis ce temps-là*. ¹⁴ *Lest, for fear that*=*de peur que, de crainte que*, with the subjunctive and *ne* before the subjunctive. See Ex. XXVII. Note ¹¹.

XLVI.—ALL LADIES.

Lord B— had married¹ three wives, who had all been his servants. A beggar-woman,² meeting him in the street, made him³ a very low⁴ curtsy. ‘Bless⁵ your lordship,’ said she, ‘and send you long life; if you do* but* live long⁶ enough, we shall all be ladies in⁷ time.’

¹ *Épouser*. ² *Beggar-woman*=*mendicante*. ³ *To him*. See Ex. II. Note ⁷. ⁴ *Profond*, before the noun. Remark.—When adjectives are used both figuratively and literally, they generally come before the noun, when used figuratively; and after it, when used literally. Ex.: *a low curtsy*=*une profonde révérence*; *a deep well*=*un puits profond*. ⁵ Verb in the third person imperative. *Que Dieu bénisse*, etc. ⁶ *Long* is *long*, *longue*, when adjective, and *longtemps*, when adverb. Also see Ex. XIV. Note ¹². ⁷ *In time*=*à temps*. *In time* (with the help of time)=*avec le temps*.

XLVII.—THEY DIE BUT ONCE.

An observing individual, in a very healthy village, seeing a sexton at work¹ in a hole in the ground, inquired² what³ he was about.’⁴ ‘Digging⁵ a grave, sir.’ ‘Digging a grave! Why,⁶ I thought people⁷ did not die often here, do they?’⁸ ‘Oh, no, sir! they die but⁹ once.’

¹ *At work*=*à l'ouvrage*. ² See Ex. XL. Note ⁶. ³ See Ex. XXXIX. Note ⁷. ⁴ See Ex. XXVI. Note ⁷. ⁵ Translate, *I am digging a grave*. ⁶ *Mais, bah!* ⁷ See Ex. XXVI. Note ². ⁸ *Do they?*=*serais-je dans l'erreur?* ⁹ *But*, meaning *only*, is rendered by *seulement* or *ne que*, *ne* before the verb and *que* after it.

XLVIII.—LONG FACES.

‘Barber,’ said a farmer to a tonsor, ‘now that corn is cheap, you ought¹ to shave for² half price.’ ‘I can’t, Mr. Jones,’ said the hairdresser. ‘I ought really to charge³ more⁴; for,⁵ when corn is down,⁶

farmers make such⁷ long faces that I⁸ have twice the ground to go over.⁹

¹ *Devriez.* ² *For half price=à moitié prix.* ³ *Prendre.* ⁴ See Ex. II. Note ⁵. ⁵ See Ex. XXIV. Note ³. After *car*, translate *when* by *lorsque*, not by *quand*, for the sake of euphony. ⁶ *Bon marché.* ⁷ *Such* is *si*, when followed by an adjective. Also remember that *de* (only) is the partitive article to be placed before an adjective, whether the noun be masculine or feminine, singular or plural. ⁸ *Que cela me donne deux fois plus d'ouvrage.*

XLIX.—ABOUT THE POST-OFFICE.¹

A Miser's P.S.—Excuse me for² not having put a stamp on my letter. I only thought of³ it after⁴ it was in the letter-box.

*Postage paid.**—‘Why did you charge⁶ my son⁶ threepence for the letter I sent him?’ said a peasant to the village postmaster. ‘Because you had⁷ not paid the postage.’ ‘Not paid the postage! I beg⁸ your pardon, I had,⁹ here is¹⁰ the receipt you gave me yourself.’ Here the peasant handed¹¹ the stamp.

¹ *Poste* (fem.) means *Post-office*; *poste* (masc.) means *military post, police station*. ² Translate, if I have not put a stamp; *a*, in a negative sentence, is translated by *de* (any). ³ See Ex. III. Note ². *Of it=en*; *at* or *to it=y*. These pronouns are placed immediately before the verb. ⁴ See Ex. XXXV. Note ². ⁵ See Ex. XLVIII. Note ³. ⁶ *To my son.* Note.—When the direct and indirect objects are of equal length, the direct object must be placed first. When they are not of equal length, the shorter must be placed first. ⁷ *To pay the postage of a letter=affranchir une lettre.* ⁸ *I beg your pardon=Je vous demande pardon.* (*Vous* is here in the dative.) ⁹ Translate, I had paid the postage and see Note ⁷ above. ¹⁰ *Here is, here are=voici* (vois ici), *there is, there are=voilà* (vois là). ¹¹ *Présenter.*

L.—GIN AND WATER.

A clamorous old lady inquired¹ of a gentleman seated next² to her at a scientific lecture: ‘Pray, sir, what³ does the lecturer mean⁴ by oxy-gin and

hydro-gin, and what⁵ is the difference?' 'Very little,⁶ Madam,' said he; 'by oxy-gin, he means⁴ pure gin; by hydro-gin, gin and water.'

¹ See Ex. XL Note ⁶, with a dative. ² Next to her=*près d'elle*. ³ What (pronoun) is *qu'est-ce qui*, when nominative, and *que* or *qu'est-ce que*, followed by the verb, when accusative. What, after a preposition, is *quoi*. ⁴ To mean=*entendre, vouloir dire*. ⁵ What, adjective, is *quel*. ⁶ See Ex. XLI. Note ³.

LI.—A LADY ON TOM MOORE.

A correspondent who used to live¹ close to the residence of the late² Tom Moore, tells³ the following anecdote: 'Once⁴ driving⁵ home to Chippenham from Devizes, I took an old lady in the trap; and in conversation I asked her if she saw⁶ much of Tom Moore in her village, when he was alive. 'Tom Moore? Tom Moore, sir?' said she. 'Oh! you mean⁷ Mr. Moore. Mrs. Moore was a kind lady, but Mr. Moore used to write⁸ all sorts of verses on the moon, and such⁹ like things. He was no account.'¹⁰

¹ Used to live is the imperfect of *to live*. ² See Ex. XIV. Note ³. ³ See Ex. XLV. Note ¹. ⁴ See Ex. I. Note ². ⁵ To drive=*aller en voiture*; to take a drive=*faire une promenade en voiture*. In the same way to ride=*aller à cheval*, and to take a ride=*faire une promenade à cheval*. ⁶ To see much of=*connaître*. ⁷ See Ex. L. Note ⁴. ⁸ Used to write is the imperfect indicative of *to write*. ⁹ Such like things=*de pareilles choses*. ¹⁰ *Il n'était rien de remarquable*.

LII.—BODY AND SPIRIT.

A well-known city officer in¹ Auld Reekie was celebrated for his cunning and wit. His mother having² died in¹ Edinburgh, he hired a hearse and carried her to the family burying-place³ in the Highlands. He returned⁴ with the hearse full of smuggled whisky, and being teased⁵ about it by a friend, he said: 'Oh! man, there is no

harm done, I only took away⁶ the body and brought back⁷ the spirit.'

¹ See Ex. XVIII. Note ². ² The verb *mourir* is used with the auxiliary *être*. ³ *Tombeau de famille*. ⁴ See Ex. XLIV. Note ¹². ⁵ Use the active voice. ⁶ *To take away=emmener*, speaking of persons and animals alive, and *emporter*, speaking of inanimate things. ⁷ *To bring back=ramener or rapporter*. See Note ⁶ above.

LIII.—A DIFFICULTY.

A man bought a horse on¹ condition that he should pay half² down³ and be in debt for⁴ the remainder. A short time after the seller demanded payment of the balance. The other answered: 'No; it was agreed⁵ that I should be in your debt for the remainder. How can that be if I pay it?'

¹ *On condition=à condition*. ² *Half (noun)=moitié (fem.)*, *half (adjective)=demi*, which agrees in gender with the noun, when it follows it, and does not, when it precedes it. Ex.: *Une demi-livre; une livre et demie*. ³ *Down, ready money=comptant*. ⁴ *To be in debt for=devoir*. ⁵ *It was agreed=il était convenu*.

LIV.—TWENTY TIMES.

'I remember,' says the celebrated Wesley, 'hearing¹ my father say to my mother, "How could² you have the patience to tell³ that block-head the same thing twenty times⁴ over?" "Why," said she, "if I had told⁵ him only nineteen times I should have lost all my labour."''

¹ *Avoir entendu*. ² See Ex. XXXIII. Note ³. ³ *To tell over=répéter (active)*. ⁴ *Twenty times* is an adverbial locution. See Ex. I. Note ².

LV.—AN ERROR.

An amusing incident in¹ the House of Commons² is noticed by a London correspondent. The House was discussing the Civil Service estimates,³ and in the vote for mining inspectors

there was an item⁴ for 'clerical assistance.' Thereupon⁵ Mr. Muntz, of Birmingham, rose and objected. He did not, he said, know that the mining inspectors were such⁶ very * wicked people⁷ that they required clergymen to be kept⁸ to⁹ look¹⁰ specially¹¹ after their spiritual condition. The House roared,¹² and the honourable¹³ member himself joined¹⁴ as heartily¹⁵ as any one in the laugh¹⁶ when some of his friends near him¹⁷ explained that by 'clerical assistance' was¹⁸ meant the assistance of clerks, not of clergymen.

¹ See Ex. V. Note ⁵. ² *Chambre des Communes*. ³ *Budget*. ⁴ *Article*. ⁵ *Thereupon*=*là-dessus*. ⁶ See Ex. XLVIII. Note 7. ⁷ See Ex. XXVI. Note 2. ⁸ Translate *they required that one should keep clergymen*. *Require* governs the subjunctive mood. ⁹ See Ex. II. Note 4. ¹⁰ *To look after*=*prendre soin de*. ¹¹ See Ex. I. Note 2. ¹² *To roar with laughter*=*Rire à gorge déployée*. ¹³ *Honourable* here must precede the noun, it is used figuratively; See Ex. XLVI. Note 4. ¹⁴ *To join in*=*prendre part à*. ¹⁵ *As heartily as any one*=*d'aussi bon cœur que tout le monde*. ¹⁶ *Hilarité générale*. ¹⁷ Translate, *who were near him*. ¹⁸ See Ex. III. Note 1 and Ex. L. Note 4.

LVI.—HIS OWN MEDICINE-CHEST.¹

The surgeon of an English ship-of-war used to prescribe² salt water for his patients³ in all disorders.⁴ Having sailed⁵ one evening⁶ he happened⁷ to be drowned.

The captain, who had not heard of⁸ the disaster, asked⁹ one of the tars next day,¹⁰ if he had heard of⁸ the doctor. 'Yes,' answered Jack, 'he was drowned¹¹ last night¹² in his own medicine-chest.'

¹ *Coffre de médicaments*. ² *To prescribe (med.)*=*ordonner*. ³ *Patient (med.)*=*malade*. ⁴ *Dérangement*. ⁵ *To sail*=*faire une promenade en mer* or *en bateau*. ⁶ See Ex. I. Note 2. ⁷ *Il lui arriva de se noyer*. ⁸ *To hear (the sound)*=*entendre*. *To hear (to learn)*=*apprendre*. *To hear (say)*=*entendre dire*. *To hear of*=*entendre parler de*. *To hear from*=*recevoir des nouvelles de*. ⁹ See Ex. XIII. Note 12. ¹⁰ *Next day*=*le jour suivant*. See Ex. I. Note 2. ¹¹ *To be, to get drowned*=*se noyer*. See Ex. IX. Note 11. ¹² *Last night*=*hier au soir*.

LVII.—FORGIVENESS.

Sir Walter Scott, in his article in the *Quarterly Review* on the Culloden papers, mentions a characteristic instance of an old Highland warrior's mode of pardon 'You must¹ forgive even your bitterest² enemy, Kenmuir,' said the confessor to him,³ as he lay⁴ gasping on his deathbed. 'Well, if I must,⁵ I must,' replied the chieftain; and, turning to⁶ his son he added: 'But my curse be⁷ on you, Donald, if you forgive him.'

¹ *You must forgive*=vous devez pardonner à. ² *Bitter enemy*=ennemi acharné. ³ See Ex. II. Note⁷. ⁴ *As he lay gasping on his deathbed*=au moment où il était couché, luttant contre la mort. ⁵ Translate, *if I must forgive him, I will do it.* ⁶ *To turn to*=se tourner vers. ⁷ *My curse be on you*=malheur à toi, que ma malédiction retombe sur toi.

LVIII.—A VERY LONG NOSE.

A gentleman having put out¹ a candle by accident one night,² ordered³ his servant to light it again in the kitchen; adding: 'But take care, James, that you⁴ do not hit yourself in the dark.'⁵ Mindful of the caution, James stretched out⁶ both arms at full length before⁷ him, but unluckily a door that stood⁸ half open, passed between his hands and struck him⁹ a woful blow upon the nose. 'Good gracious!'¹⁰ muttered he, when he recovered his senses a little,¹¹ 'I always heard¹² that I had a very long nose, but I vow¹³ I never thought¹⁴ that it was longer than my arm!'

¹ *To put out* (fire, light)=éteindre. ² *One night*=un soir. See Ex. I. Note². ³ With the dative. ⁴ Translate, *not to hit yourself*; because the verb in the principal sentence is in the same person as that of the subordinate sentence. See Ex. XXVII. Note¹¹. ⁵ *Dark*=obscurité. ⁶ *Stretched out both arms*=étendit les deux bras. ⁷ See Ex. XIX. Note⁶. ⁸ *That stood half open*=qui était entr'ouverte. ⁹ In the dative. See Ex. II. Note⁷. ¹⁰ *Sapristi!* ¹¹ See Ex. I. Note², and Ex. XLI. Note³. ¹² Translate, *I have always heard.* See Ex. XI. Note⁶ and Ex. LVI. Note⁸. ¹³ *Jurer.* ¹⁴ Translate, *never to have thought.* See Ex. XXVII. Note¹¹.

LIX.—EXAMINATION.

Exam. What¹ is the definition of inheritance?

Boy. Patrimony.

Exam. And what is patrimony?

Boy. Something² left by a father.

Exam. What would it be if³ left by a mother?

Boy. Matrimony,⁴ I suppose, sir.

¹ See Ex. L. Note ⁵. ² *Rien, quelqu'un*, and *quelque chose* require *de* before the adjective or participle used adjectively which follows. *Ex.*: *Rien de bon*, nothing good; *quelqu'un de tué*, somebody killed; *quelque chose de cassé*, something broken. *Chose* is feminine, but *quelque chose* is a masculine compound noun. *Quelque chose* is feminine, however, when it means *anything whatever*. ³ Translate, *if it were left*. ⁴ No joke will exist in French, as *matrimony* is *mariage*. I should suggest a neologism (*matrimoine*).

LX.—CUTTING OUT THE THIRD ACT.

Mr. Byron's name is associated with¹ a witty story. When one of his plays was brought out² at Liverpool, an awful 'wait'³ occurred after the second act. The orchestra played, and played again. Presently⁴ a harsh grating⁵ sound was heard⁶ behind—something⁷ like sawing. Some one asked⁸ the author what⁹ it¹⁰ meant.¹¹ 'I can't say,'¹² he answered¹³ sadly. 'I suppose they are cutting out * the third act.'

¹ *à*. ² *To bring out* (theat.)=*représenter*. ³ *Pause*. ⁴ *Tout-à-coup*. ⁵ *A harsh grating sound*=*un bruit*; then see Note ⁷ below. ⁶ See Ex. III. Note ¹. ⁷ *Something like sawing*=*pareil (un bruit) à celui que l'on fait quand on scie quelque chose*. ⁸ See Ex. XIII. Note ¹¹. ⁹ See Ex. XXXIX. Note ⁷. ¹⁰ *Cela*. ¹¹ See Ex. L. Note ⁴. ¹² *Je ne saurais le dire* or *je ne peux pas vous le dire*. ¹³ See Ex. IX. Note ¹⁰.

LXI.—INCONVENIENCE.

On¹ the last night of Macready's engagement at Paris he performed Othello, and when he was called² before³ the curtain, a number⁴ of his

French audience⁵ leaped on the stage and overwhelmed⁶ him with⁷ embraces. This *épanchement du cœur*, as they say, brought its inconveniences, and many faces showed the effect of their contact with that⁸ of the Moor.

¹ Translate, *Macready, on the last night of his engagement at Paris, performed*, etc. ² See Ex. III. Note ¹. ³ See Ex. XIX. Note ². ⁴ *Un grand nombre*. ⁵ *Number*, a collective, cannot be followed by *audience*, another collective. *A number of his French audience* should be translated by *un grand nombre de Français qui assistaient à la représentation*. ⁶ *Accabler*. ⁷ See Ex. XII. Note ². ⁸ Demonstrative pronoun *celui, celle, ceux, celles*.

LXII.—I WILL RETURN¹ ANON.

Mr. Dickens used to relate² with much humour a little scene he witnessed³ at the Rochester theatre. An actor had forgotten his part,⁴ and could⁵ not get⁶ the prompter to give him the 'word.' After many adjurations, and the usual appeals to his own invention, he assumed⁷ a tragic port,⁸ addressed⁹ his companion with,* 'I will¹⁰ return¹¹ anon,' and stalked¹² off the stage to¹³ seek the neglectful prompter.

¹ *Je reviens à l'instant*. ² The imperfect of *Raconter* or *avait l'habitude de raconter*. ³ *To witness*=*être témoin de*. ⁴ *Rôle* (masc.). ⁵ See Ex. XXXIII. Note ². ⁶ *Get the prompter to give him the word*=*Se faire donner le mot par le souffleur*. ⁷ *Prendre*. ⁸ *Posture* (fem.). ⁹ *Dit à*. ¹⁰ Write the verb in the present, as the future action will take place at once, or else use *je vais*. See Note ¹ above. ¹¹ See Ex. XLIV. Note ¹². ¹² *He stalked off the stage*=*Il quitta la scène à pas majestueux*. ¹³ See Ex. II. Note ⁵.

LXIII.—LITERAL.

Once, when John Kemble played¹ Hamlet in the country,² the actor who enacted Guildenstern was, or imagined himself³ to be, a capital musician. Hamlet asks him: 'Will you play upon⁴ this pipe?' 'My lord, I cannot.⁵ 'I pray⁶ you.'

'Believe me, I cannot.'⁶ 'I do beseech' you.'
 'Well, if your lordship insists on* it,* I shall do as well as⁸ I can'; and, to the confusion of Hamlet, and the great amusement of the audience,⁹ he played *God save the King*.

¹ Was playing (the imperfect). ² In the country=en province. Country=pays, when it means the whole land, and campagne, when it means the villages, the fields. ³ S'imaginer. ⁴ Jouer (before the name of an instrument), requires de. ⁵ I cannot=Cela m'est impossible. ⁶ I pray you=Je vous en prie. ⁷ I do beseech you=Oh! je vous en supplie. ⁸ Translate, I shall do my best. To do one's best=Faire de son mieux. ⁹ See Ex. XI. Note ⁵.

LXIV.—A DISCOUNTESS.

At a party¹ given by a great banker, who had made² millions on government securities,³ a witty lady pointed out⁴ to her companion, also a banker, the wife of the host, remarking: 'What a⁵ splendid creature! she ought⁶ to be a⁷ countess!' 'Oh! yes, beautiful enough,⁸ but perhaps⁹ she prefers to be a discountess.'

¹ See Ex. XXII. Note ³. ² To make money=gagner de l'argent. ³ Valeurs garanties par le gouvernement. ⁴ Fit remarquer. ⁵ What a. In exclamative sentences, what only is translated. See Ex. L. Note ⁵. ⁶ Devrait. ⁷ See Ex. XLV. Note ¹². ⁸ See Ex. XIV. Note ¹³. ⁹ See Ex. XXVII. Note ¹³.

LXV.—VERY POOR.

One of the unfortunate juveniles who visit the hotels and solicit pennies was asked,¹ 'Where is your² mother?' She answered diffidently, 'She is dead.' 'Have you no³ father?' 'Yes, sir, but he is sick.' 'What⁴ ails⁵ him?' continued the questioner. 'He has got a sore finger,⁶ sir.' 'Indeed?' 'Yes, sir.' 'Why does he not cut it off,* then?' 'Please, sir,' responded the little

maid, 'he has not got* any³ money to⁷ buy a knife.'

¹ See Ex. III. Note ¹. ² The child is spoken to in the second person singular. ³ When a sentence is negative, the partitive article is simply *de*, for masculine or feminine, for singular or plural. ⁴ See Ex. I. Note ². ⁵ Literally translate, *what has he?* ⁶ *He has got a sore finger=Il a mal à un doigt.* Cf. *J'ai mal à la tête, I have a headache; j'ai mal au cœur, I feel sick; j'ai mal au pied, I have a sore foot, etc.* ⁷ See Ex. II. Note ⁵.

LXVI.—TWO BROTHERS DENTISTS.

Two brothers, who were very successful¹ dentists, built² a very large and handsome house, which was thought³ to resemble⁴ a large molar tooth in shape.⁵ It was a common remark: 'See what⁶ brothers can do when they pull together.'

¹ *Qui avaient beaucoup de succès comme dentistes.* ² *Built=frent bâtir*, as they did not build it themselves. ³ *Was thought, selon l'opinion générale.* ⁴ *Ressembler à.* ⁵ *Par la forme.* ⁶ See Ex. XXXIX. Note ⁷.

LXVII.—ERSKINE AND THELWALL.

Thelwall, when¹ on his trial² for treason in 1792, kept up³ an incessant correspondence with his counsel. Dissatisfied with⁴ a part of his case, he passed a slip of paper, 'I will plead my own cause'; to which⁵ Erskine scribbled,⁶ 'If you do,⁷ you'll be⁸ hanged.' To which⁵ Thelwall gave the following rejoinder, 'Then, I'll be⁹ hanged if I do.'¹⁰

¹ Translate, *when he was.* ² *On his trial=mis en jugement.* ³ *To keep up an incessant correspondence = correspondre continuellement.* ⁴ See Ex. XII. Note ⁹. ⁵ See Ex. XLII. Note ⁵. ⁶ *Grifonner.* ⁷ Translate, *If you do that (cela).* ⁸ Ordinary future of *to be*. ⁹ Stress is impressed on *will*. Use the verb *vouloir* with the infinitive of *être*; or else say *que je sois pendu*. ¹⁰ Translate, *if I do it*.

LXVIII.—THE FORCE OF TRUTH.

Dreadful limits are set¹ in nature to the powers² of dissimulation. Truth tyrannises over³ the unwilling members of the body. Faces never lie, it is said.⁴ No man⁵ need be deceived who will study the changes of expression. When a man speaks⁶ the truth in the spirit of truth, his eye is as clear as the heavens. When he has base ends,⁷ and⁸ speaks falsely, his eye is muddy,⁹ and sometimes asquint. I have heard¹⁰ an experienced counsellor say, that he never feared the effect upon a jury of a lawyer who does not believe in his heart¹¹ that his client ought to have a verdict.¹²—EMERSON'S *Essays on Spiritual Laws*.

¹ *Imposer*. ² *Force* (sing.). ³ *To tyrannise over = tyranniser*. ⁴ Translate, *It is said that*, etc., and see Ex. III. Note ¹. ⁵ Translate, *A man who will study the changes of expression*, etc. See Ex. VII. Note ² (Rule). ⁶ *Parler* is a neuter verb, except in the expression, *Parler une langue*. *To speak the truth = Dire la vérité*. ⁷ *Motif*. When an adjective precedes a noun, taken in a partitive sense, the article is simply *de*. ⁸ See Ex. XVII. Note ⁵. ⁹ *Trouble*. ¹⁰ See Ex. LVI. Note ⁸. ¹¹ *In his heart = en conscience*. ¹² *To have a verdict = gagner sa cause*.

LXIX.—GARRICK'S END.

Garrick, a few¹ hours before² his death, became a little³ clouded⁴ in his faculties. He noticed⁵ that the room was⁶ full of strange figures gliding about,⁷ and in his half-waking state, asked who they were. He was told⁸ they⁹ were physicians, and, indeed, the first doctors in¹⁰ London had crowded¹¹ to his bedside.¹² The dying actor raised his¹³ head and was heard¹⁴ to mutter :—

'Another and another still succeeds,
And the last fool is welcome as¹⁵ the former.'

¹ See Ex. XXI. Note ⁵. ² See Ex. XIX. Note ⁹. ³ See Ex. XLI. Note ³. ⁴ *Obscurcir*. ⁵ *Remarquer*, in the perfect (narrative). ⁶ *Im*

perfect. The room was full at the time when he noticed. See Ex. XVIII. Note ⁶. (Remark.) ⁷ *Passer rapidement*. ⁸ See Ex. III. Note ¹. ⁹ See Ex. XIII. Note ¹⁴. ¹⁰ See Ex. I. Note ⁶. The adjectives, *premier*, *dernier*, *unique*, *seul*, are considered as superlatives. ¹¹ *Se presser en foule*. See Ex. IX. Note ¹¹. ¹² *Bedside=chevet* (masc.). ¹³ *la*. ¹⁴ See Ex. III. Note ¹. ¹⁵ *Is welcome as=est aussi bienvenu que*.

LXX.—OLIVER BASSELIN AND THE ORIGIN OF THE WORD 'VAUDEVILLE.'

In the valley of the Vire
Still is seen¹ an ancient mill,
With its² gables quaint and queer,
And beneath the window-sill,
On the stone,
These words alone :
'Oliver Basselin lived here.'

Oliver Basselin, the '*Père joyeux du Vaudeville*,' flourished³ in the⁴ fifteenth century; and gave to his convivial⁵ songs the name of his native valleys, in which he sang them: Vaux-de-Vire. This name was afterwards corrupted into the modern '*Vaudeville*.'—LONGFELLOW.

¹ See Ex. III. Note ¹. ² *With its=aux*. ³ The verb *fleurir*, to blossom, is regular in its literal sense; but when it is used figuratively, signifying to be in a prosperous state, to flourish, it makes *florissant* in the present participle and *florissais* in the imperfect of the indicative. ⁴ *In the=au*. ⁵ *Joyeux*. *Chansons à boire* or *chansons de table*.

LXXI.—BEARDING A BARBER.

A Highlander who sold¹ brooms went into² a barber's shop in Glasgow to³ get shaved.⁴ The barber bought one of his brooms, and, after having⁵ shaved him,⁶ asked⁷ him the price of it.⁸ 'Twopence,' said the Highlander. 'No, no,' said the shaver; 'I will⁹ give you a penny, and if that

does not satisfy you, take¹⁰ your broom again.' The Highlander took it, and asked what¹¹ he had to pay. 'A penny,' said the barber. 'I will⁹ give you a bawbee, and if that does not satisfy you, put on¹² my beard again.'

¹ Was selling, used to sell (imperfect). ² To go in=*entrer dans*. ³ See Ex. II. Note ⁵. ⁴ to get shaved=*se faire raser*. ⁵ See Ex. IV. Note ². ⁶ See Ex. III. Note ⁴. ⁷ See Ex. XIII. Note ¹¹. ⁸ Of it=*en*, must be placed immediately before the verb. ⁹ See Ex. XI. Note ⁹. ¹⁰ To take again=*Reprendre*. ¹¹ See Ex. XXXIX. Note ⁷. ¹² To put on=*mettre, placer*. To put on again=*remettre, replacer, remettre en place*.

LXXII.—THE SCHOOL FOR SCANDAL.

Although¹ it must ever rank² as a finished piece³ in the simplicity of plot,⁴ in the natural progression of incident, in the faithful imitation of manners, in the vigorous and exact delineation of living characters, and, above all,⁵ in fertility of wit and felicity of expression, it is to be regretted,⁶ that the author did⁷ not apply⁸ himself with more⁹ care to improve the heart, and stimulate the public mind to the cultivation of morality.

The fashionable taste for scandal is indeed exposed, but it is exposed to the laughter, not to the contempt and detestation, of the audience.¹⁰ It produces mirth, but does not excite execration. The hypocrite, who covers his abominable designs with¹¹ the mask of honour and integrity, is indeed punished; but the punishment is not commensurate to the offence. . . .—J. W. LAKE.

¹ Although=*quoique, bien que*, with the subjunctive mood. ² To rank (neuter)=*être considéré*. ³ finished piece=*pièce accomplie, comédie parfaite*. ⁴ Plot (theat.)=*intrigue* (fem.). ⁵ Above all=*surtout*. ⁶ Translate, one must regret, on doit regretter. ⁷ See Rule Ex. VII. Note ⁴. ⁸ To apply oneself to=*s'appliquer à*. Reflexive verbs generally require *à* before the infinitive which follows them. ⁹ See Rule Ex. XI. Note ¹⁷. ¹⁰ See Ex. XI. Note ⁵. ¹¹ See Ex. XII. Note ⁹.

LXXIII.—A LOSS.

A few¹ days after Dickens's death an Englishman, deeply grieved at² the event, made a sort of pilgrimage to Gad's Hill—to the home of the great novelist. He went into³ the famous 'Sir John Falstaff' inn near at hand,⁴ and, in the effusiveness of his honest⁵ emotions, he could⁶ not avoid taking⁷ the waiter into his confidence. 'A great loss this,⁸ of Mr. Dickens,' said the pilgrim. 'A great loss to⁹ us, sir,' replied the waiter, deeply moved; 'he had¹⁰ all his ale sent in from this house!'

¹ See Ex. XXI. Note ⁵. ² *De*. ³ See Ex. LXXI. Note ². ⁴ *Near at hand*=*qui se trouve tout près de l'endroit*. ⁵ See Ex. XLVI. Note ⁴. ⁶ See Ex. XXXIII. Note ³. *Rule*.—*Pas* and *point* may be suppressed after the verbs *cesser*, *to cease*; *oser*, *to dare*; and *pouvoir*, *to be able*. When the negative, however, has to be strong, *pas* must be expressed. *Ne pas pouvoir*, for instance, expresses complete impossibility; *ne pouvoir* is much less strong. ⁷ *S'empêcher de mettre*. ⁸ *Que celle*. ⁹ *Pour*. ¹⁰ *He had all his ale sent in*=*il se faisait envoyer toute sa bière*.

LXXIV.—NOT TAKEN IN.¹

A gentleman was riding² on the outside³ of a country coach,⁴ when the driver said to him: 'I have a coin which is two hundred years old.⁵ Did you⁶ ever see a coin two hundred years old?' 'Oh, yes, I have one⁷ myself, which is two thousand years old.' 'Ah! have you?'⁸ said the driver, and he spoke no more⁹ during the rest of the journey. When the coach arrived at its destination, the driver came up¹⁰ to the gentleman with¹¹ an intensely self-satisfied¹² air, and said: 'I told you, as¹³ we drove along, that I had a coin two hundred years old.' 'Yes.' 'And you told me you had one¹⁴ two thousand years old.' 'Yes.' 'Now,¹⁵ it's a lie.' 'What do you mean¹⁶

by that?' 'What do I mean? Why, it's only¹⁷ 1860 now.'

¹ *Dupé, trompé, attrapé.* ² *Voyageait.* Verbs in *ger* take an *e* mute after the *g*, when that consonant is followed by the vowel *a* or *o*, in order that the *g* may preserve its soft sound (that of the infinitive). ³ *Outside* (of a coach, omnibus, etc.) is *impériale*, (fem.) or *banquette* (fem.). ⁴ *Coach, stage-coach=diligence* (fem.). ⁵ *to be so many years old=avoir tant d'ans; être âgé de tant d'ans.* The second expression refers only to persons or animals. ⁶ Translate, *Have you ever seen*, etc. ⁷ *One*, in French *one of them*, the noun being understood after *one*. *Of it, of them=en*, pronoun, which must be placed before the verb. ⁸ *Have you? =vraiment*, ⁹ See Ex. XXII. Note ¹⁰. ¹⁰ See Ex. XLV. Note ¹¹. ¹¹ See Ex. XII. Note ¹². ¹² *Intensely self-satisfied=des plus satisfaits.* ¹³ *As we drove along=sur la route, chemin faisant.* ¹⁴ See Note ⁷ above. ¹⁵ *Hé bien!* ¹⁶ See Ex. XXXIX. Note ⁷, and Ex. L. Note ⁴. ¹⁷ Translate *we are only in* (*en*).

LXXV.—ON LORD ERSKINE.

Dr. Parr and Erskine were very fond of¹ bandying² compliments between each other.³ Parr once told the latter that, if he survived⁴ him, he would write his epitaph. 'You are wrong⁵ to say that, Doctor,' replied Erskine, 'for⁶ you hold⁷ out to me an inducement to commit suicide.'

Erskine had a most singular *penchant* for witnessing⁸ fires, and has been known⁹ to leave the House of Commons in the midst¹⁰ of a debate on¹¹ hearing¹² that a conflagration was to be seen¹³ within a mile. Sheridan said that a chimney could¹⁴ not smoke in the Borough without¹⁵ Erskine's knowledge.

¹ *To be fond of=aimer à;* *To be very fond of=aimer beaucoup à.* ² *Renvoyer.* ³ With each other, the verb must be reflexive. *Between each other=l'un à l'autre.* Remark.—*L'un l'autre* is used with reference to two, and *les uns les autres* with reference to more than two. When there is a preposition before each other it must be placed in French between *l'un* and *l'autre* or *les uns* and *es autres*. ⁴ *Survivre* is neuter. ⁵ *To be wrong to=avoir tort*

de; to be right to=avoir raison de; to have a right to=avoir le droit de; to be entitled to=avoir droit à. ⁶ See Ex. XXIV. Note ³. ⁷ *To hold out=offrir.* ⁸ *For witnessing.* See Ex. XXIV. Note ³; Ex. IV. Note ². *To witness=voir, assister à.* *Fire will be here incendie.* ⁹ Translate, and one knows that. ¹⁰ *In the midst=au milieu.* ¹¹ *En.* See Ex. IV. Note ². ¹² See Ex. LVI. Note ³. ¹³ Translate, that one could see a conflagration within a mile. See Ex. XXXIII. Note ³. ¹⁴ See Ex. XXXIII. Note ³. ¹⁵ *Without Erskine's knowledge=qu'Erskine ne le sût.* *Sût* is in the subjunctive, because in this sentence *que* stands for *sans que*, which requires the subjunctive. As for *ne*, See Ex. XXXVIII. Note ¹¹.

LXXVI.—ON QUIN.

A gentleman had helped himself to¹ an enormous piece of bread, which Quin attempted to take. 'Sir, that is my bread,' said the gentleman. 'Oh! I beg² your pardon,' said Quin humbly, 'I thought³ it⁴ was the loaf.'⁵

Quin and Mrs. Pritchard performed as⁶ Chaumont and Monimia in Otway's pathetic play of *The Orphan*. Both⁷ were old, and very bulky⁸ in their figures, and nothing⁹ could¹⁰ have been more ludicrous than to¹¹ hear Quin mouthing out:¹²

'Two unhappy orphans, alas! we are.'

But both¹³ were so respected, and had such¹⁴ dignity, that the audience¹⁵ listened with the utmost gravity.

¹ *To help oneself to (at table)=Se servir, prendre. To help some one to=Offrir . . . à quelqu'un.* ² See Ex. XLIX. Note ³. ³ Use *croire* in the imperfect of the indicative (I was thinking). ⁴ See Ex. XIII. Note ¹⁴. ⁵ *Loaf* being *pain*, the same as *bread*, translate *loaf* by *le pain tout entier*. ⁶ *To perform as=Jouer le rôle de*, or simply *faire*. ⁷ *Both were old=Ils étaient vieux tous les deux.* ⁸ Translate, and their corpulency was enormous. ⁹ After *rien* the verb must be preceded by *ne*. ¹⁰ See Ex. XXXIII. Note ³. ¹¹ After *que (than)*, the infinitive must be preceded by *de*. ¹² *To mouth out=vociférer.* ¹³ Translate, they were so respected both, and see Note ⁷ above. ¹⁴ *Tant de* (so much). ¹⁵ See Ex. XI. Note ⁶.

LXXVII.—PREFACE TO 'THE LIFE OF AN OYSTER, WRITTEN BY HIMSELF.'

How can an oyster write? Gentle reader, if you begin with¹ such² an impertinent query, pestering me on the very³ threshold with your supercilious scepticism, you would do better to seek an amusement and instruction elsewhere.⁴ Recollect how⁵ easy it is to ask⁶ questions, and how⁵ difficult it often is to answer⁷ them. Do you think that none write⁸ but those who can⁹ write? If so,¹⁰ you had better¹¹ go and* read, and you will soon be convinced of your error.—*Athenæum*.

¹ To begin with=*Commencer par*. ² See Ex. XLVIII. Note 7. ³ *Même*, before the noun, means *same*, *même*, after the noun, means *very*. ⁴ See Ex. I. Note 2. ⁵ See Ex. XXXIX. Note 2. ⁶ To ask questions=*Faire des questions*. The verb *faire* is generally used in French to avoid tautologies. For instance, *to take prisoners*=*faire des prisonniers*; *to dream a dream*=*faire un rêve*. However, *to fight a battle* is *livrer une bataille*; and *to gain a victory* is *remporter une victoire*. ⁷ Answer=*répondre à*. To it or to them=*y*, which must be placed before the verb. ⁸ Rule.—After an interrogation, and after a verb accompanied by a negation, the subjunctive must be used. ⁹ Use the verb *savoir*. ¹⁰ If so, if it is so=*s'il en est ainsi*. ¹¹ You had better=*Vous ferez bien de*.

LXXVIII.—SHARP GIRL.

An ignorant housemaid who had to call a gentleman to¹ dinner, found him engaged in² using a tooth-brush. 'Well, is he coming?'³ said the lady of the house, when the servant returned.⁴ 'Yes, ma'am, directly,' was the reply; 'he is just⁵ sharpening⁶ his⁷ teeth.'

¹ Pour le. ² Occupé à. See Ex. IV. Note 2. ³ See Ex. II. Note 2. ⁴ See Ex. XLIV. Note 13. ⁵ Il est en train de. ⁶ To sharpen=*aiguiser*. ⁷ Rule.—The part of the body or faculty of the mind is preceded by the article, and not by the possessive adjective. A personal pronoun in the dative, representing the person whose part of the body or faculty of the mind is acted upon, is placed

before the verb. **Ex.** : *I am washing my hands*=*Je me lave les mains*. *I am washing his hands*=*Je lui lave les mains*. If the person who suffers the action expressed by the verb has not been named, instead of placing a personal pronoun in the dative before the verb, the noun of person in the dative comes after the verb. **Ex.** : *They cut off the heads of their prisoners*=*Ils coupent la tête à leurs prisonniers*; *I am washing Henry's hands*=*Je lave les mains à Henri*.

LXXIX.—A COMPLIMENT.

During his first success at Drury Lane, Kean overheard¹ a knot² of old stage-carpenters discussing the various performers³ they had seen⁴ in their day.⁵ 'Well,' said one, 'you may talk of Henderson and Kemble, and this new man, but give me Bannister. *He had always done*⁶ *twenty minutes sooner than any one*⁷ *of 'em.*'⁸

¹ To overhear=*entendre par hasard*. ² Groupe (masc.). ³ Acteurs, comédiens. ⁴ See Ex. III. Note ³. ⁵ Temps. ⁶ Fini. ⁷ Aucun. ⁸ See Ex. XIII. Note ³.

LXXX.—A KIND REQUEST.

Macklin, when¹ sitting at the back² of the boxes,³ was prevented⁴ from seeing the stage by a gentleman who stood up⁵ in front. He tapped him with his stick on the shoulder, and addressed⁶ him with the most studious politeness: 'When anything⁷ entertaining occurs on the stage, perhaps⁸ you will let⁹ me and my friend know; for¹⁰ you see, my dear sir, that at present we must¹¹ totally depend upon¹² your kindness.'

¹ Translate, *when Macklin was sitting*, etc. ² At the back of=*derrière*. ³ Box (theat.)=*loge* (fem.). ⁴ Take the active form, *and a gentleman who . . . prevented him . . .* ⁵ To stand up=*se tenir debout*. ⁶ Parler (neuter). ⁷ See Ex. LIX. Note ². ⁸ See Ex. XXVII. Note ¹². ⁹ To let some one know=*Faire savoir quelque chose à quelqu'un*. ¹⁰ See Ex. XXIV. Note ³. ¹¹ Use *devoir*. ¹² To depend on=*Compter sur, dépendre de*.

LXXXI.—A WESTERN EDITOR.¹

In one of our largest cities, a short time ago,² the editor of a newspaper was met by a friend, who, taking him by the hand, exclaimed: 'I am delighted to see you. How long³ are you going to stay?' 'Well,⁴ I think,' said the editor, 'I shall stay while⁵ my money lasts.'⁶ 'How⁷ disappointed I am!' said his friend; 'I hoped⁸ you were going to⁹ stay a day or two.'

¹ *Editor* (of a paper)=*rédacteur en chef*; *éditeur*, in French, means *publisher*. ² See Ex. V. Note ⁷. ³ *How long*=*combien de temps*. ⁴ *Oh!* ⁵ *Tant que*. See Ex. XXVI. Note ¹⁴. ⁶ See Ex. XXVI. Note ¹⁴. ⁷ Ex. XXXIX. Note ⁸. ⁸ In the imperfect indicative (*I was hoping*). ⁹ The verb *aller* requires no preposition before the infinitive which follows.

PART II

I.—CHARACTER OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR.

Few¹ princes have been more fortunate than this great monarch, or were better entitled² to prosperity and grandeur, for the abilities and vigour of mind which he displayed in all his conduct. His spirit was bold and enterprising, yet guided by prudence. His ambition, which was exorbitant, and lay³ little under the restraints of justice, and still less under those of humanity, ever submitted to the dictates⁴ of reason and sound policy. Born in an age⁵ when⁶ the minds of men were intractable and unacquainted with submission,⁷ he was yet able to direct them to his purposes;⁸ and, partly from the ascendant of his vehement disposition, partly from art and dissimulation, to establish an unlimited monarchy. Though⁹ not insensible to generosity, he was hardened against compassion, and seemed equally ostentatious and ambitious of *éclat* in his clemency and his severity.

The maxims of his administration were severe; but might¹⁰ have been useful, had¹¹ they been solely employed in¹² preserving order in an established government; they were in all ill¹³ calculated for¹⁴ softening the rigours, which under the most gentle management, are inseparable from conquest.

His attempt against England was the last enterprise of this kind, which, during the course of seven hundred years, had fully succeeded in Europe; and the greatness of his genius broke through¹⁵ those limits, which first¹⁶ the feudal institutions, then¹⁷ the refined policy of princes, have fixed on the several states of Christendom.

Though¹⁸ he rendered himself infinitely odious to¹⁹ his English subjects he transmitted his power to his posterity, and the throne is still filled²⁰ by his descendants, a proof that the foundation which he laid²¹ was firm and solid, and that amongst all his violences, while he seemed only to gratify the present passion, he had still an eye²² towards futurity.—HUME.

¹ See Ex. XXI. Note ⁵, Part I. ² See Ex. LXXV. Note ⁴, Part I. ³ *And lay little under the restraints of justice*=*peu soumise aux règles de la justice*. ⁴ *voix* (sing. fem.). ⁵ *Siccle* (masc.). ⁶ See Ex. V. Note ², Part I. ⁷ *Unacquainted with submission*=*à qui la soumission était inconnue*. ⁸ *Dessins*. ⁹ *Translate, though he was*, etc. *Bien que, quoique*, require the subjunctive. ¹⁰ See Ex. XXXIII. Note ³. ¹¹ *Turn, if they had*, etc. ¹² *To employ in; to succeed in; to assist in*=*employer à; réussir or parvenir à; aider à*. ¹³ *Ill* (adverb)=*mal*. ¹⁴ See Ex. IV. Note ², and Ex. XXIV. Note ³, Part I. ¹⁵ *To break through*=*franchir*. ¹⁶ *First* (adverb)=*d'abord*. ¹⁷ *Then*=*ensuite*. ¹⁸ See Note ⁹ above. ¹⁹ *Envers*. See Ex. XXVIII. Note ⁹, Part I. ²⁰ *Occupé*. ²¹ *Poser les fondations*. ²² *Il songeait cependant à l'avenir*.

II.—CHARACTER OF ELIZABETH.

There are few¹ great personages in history who have² been more exposed to the calumny of enemies, and to the adulation of friends, than Queen Elizabeth; and yet there is scarce any³ whose reputation has been more certainly determined, by the unanimous consent⁴ of posterity. The unusual length of her administration and the strong features of her character were able to overcome all prejudices;⁵ and obliging her

detractors to abate much of their invectives, and her admirers somewhat of their panegyric, have at last, in spite of political factions, and, what is more,⁶ of religious animosities, produced a uniform judgment with regard to⁷ her conduct. Her vigour, her constancy, her magnanimity, her penetration and vigilance, are allowed to merit the highest praise, and appear not to have been surpassed by any⁸ person who ever filled a throne. A conduct less vigorous, less imperious, more sincere, more indulgent to⁹ her people, would have been requisite to¹⁰ form a perfect character.

Her singular talents for government were founded equally on her temper and on her capacity. Endowed with¹¹ a great command of herself, she obtained an uncontrolled ascendant over her people.

When we contemplate her as a¹² woman, we are apt¹³ to be struck with¹⁴ the highest admiration of her great qualities and extensive capacity; but we are apt also to require some more softness of disposition, some more lenity of temper, some of those amiable weaknesses by which her sex is distinguished.

But the true method of estimating her merit is, to lay aside¹⁵ all those considerations, and consider her merely as a rational being, placed in authority, and intrusted with¹⁶ the government of mankind. We may find it¹⁷ difficult to reconcile our fancy to her as a¹² wife; but her qualities as a¹² sovereign, though with some considerable exceptions, are the object of undisputed applause and approbation.—HUME.

¹ See Ex. XXI. Note ⁵, Part I. ² See Rule, Ex. XXXVIII. Note ¹⁰, Part I. ³ Yet there is scarce any=*cependant il en existe à peine*. ⁴ Voiz (fem.). ⁵ Prejudices=*préjugés* (masc.). ⁶ What is more=*qui plus est*. ⁷ With regard to=*à l'égard de*. ⁸ Any=*aucun*. Turn any person having ever filled a throne. Filled=*occupé*. ⁹ Envers. See Ex. XXVIII. Note ⁹, Part I. ¹⁰ See Ex. II. Note ⁵, Part I.

¹¹ *Endowed with*=*douée de*. See Ex. XII. Note ⁹, Part I. ¹² *A* is omitted before a noun used as an adjective. ¹³ *To be apt to*=*être porté à*. ¹⁴ See Ex. XXIV. Note ¹⁶, Part I. ¹⁵ *To lay aside*=*s'affranchir de, mettre de côté*. ¹⁶ *Intrusted with*=*chargé de*. ¹⁷ *Turn, we may find that it is difficult to, etc.*

III.—LABOUR.

Labour, the offspring of Want, and the mother of Health and Contentment, lived with her two daughters in a little cottage, by the side¹ of a hill, at a great distance from town. They were totally unacquainted with the great, and kept no better company than the neighbouring villagers: but having a desire of seeing the world, they forsook their companions and habitation and determined to travel.

Labour went soberly along² the road, with³ Health on her right hand,⁴ who by the sprightliness of her conversation, and songs of cheerfulness and joy, softened the toils of the way; while Contentment went smiling on the left, supporting the steps of her mother, and by her perpetual good-humour increasing the vivacity of her sister.

In this manner they travelled over⁵ forests and through towns and villages, till⁶ at last they arrived at the capital of the kingdom.

At their entrance into the great city, the mother conjured her daughters never⁷ to lose sight of⁸ her: for⁹ it¹⁰ was the will of Jupiter, she said, that their separation should be¹¹ attended¹² with¹³ the utter ruin of all three. But Health was of too gay a disposition to regard the counsels of Labour: she allowed herself¹⁴ to be debauched by Intemperance, and at last died in giving birth to Disease.

Contentment, in the absence of her sister, gave herself up¹⁵ to the enticements¹⁶ of Sloth, and

was never heard of after.¹⁷ While Labour, who could¹⁸ have no enjoyment without her daughters, went everywhere in search¹⁹ of them, till⁶ she was at last seized by Lassitude, and died in misery.²⁰—*The World*.

¹ *Sur le versant d'une colline.* ² *Along=le long de.* ³ See Ex. XXIX. Note ², Part I. ⁴ *A sa droite.* ⁵ *A travers.* ⁶ *Till=jusqu'à* when a preposition; *jusqu'à ce que* (with the subjunctive), when a conjunction. ⁷ See Ex. XXII. Note ¹⁰, Part I. ⁸ *To lose sight of some one=Perdre quelqu'un de vue.* ⁹ See Ex. XXIV. Note ², Part I. ¹⁰ See Ex. XIII. Note ¹⁴, Part I. ¹¹ See *Rule*, Ex. VII. Note ⁴, Part I. ¹² *Suivi.* ¹³ See Ex. XII. Note ⁹, Part I. ¹⁴ *To allow oneself=se laisser*, followed by the infinitive of the verb, which is used in the passive in English. ¹⁵ *To give oneself up to=Se livrer à.* ¹⁶ *Séductions.* ¹⁷ *Et l'on n'entendit jamais plus parler d'elle.* See Ex. LVI. Note ⁸, Part I. ¹⁸ See Ex. XXXIII. Note ², Part I. ¹⁹ *In search of=à la recherche de.* *In search of them=à leur recherche.* ²⁰ *Dans la misère.*

IV.—LE PÈRE DES LETTRES.

Science and the arts had, at that time,¹ made little progress in France. They were just² beginning to advance beyond the limits of Italy, where they had revived, and which had hitherto been their only seat. Francis I. took them immediately under his protection. He invited learned men to his court: he conversed with them familiarly; he employed them in business; he raised them to offices of dignity, and honoured them with³ his confidence. That race of men, not more prone to complain, when denied⁴ the respect to which they fancy themselves entitled,⁵ than apt to be pleased, when⁶ treated with the distinction which they consider as their due, thought they could not exceed in gratitude to⁷ such a benefactor, strained their invention, and employed all their ingenuity in panegyric.

Succeeding authors, warmed with their de-

scriptions of Francis's bounty, adopted their encomiums, and refined upon them.⁸ The appellation of 'Father of Letters,' bestowed upon Francis, has rendered his memory sacred among historians, and they seem to have regarded it as a sort of impiety to uncover⁹ his infirmities, or to point out¹⁰ his defects.

Thus Francis, notwithstanding his inferior abilities, and want of success, has more than equalled the fame of Charles V. The virtues which he possessed, as a¹¹ man, have entitled¹² him to greater admiration and praise than¹³ have been bestowed upon the extensive genius and fortunate arts, of a more capable, but less amiable¹⁴ rival.—ROBERTSON.

¹ *A cette époque.* ² *Ils ne faisaient que de commencer à.* *Ne faire que de*=to have just done, to be just doing. *Ne faire que*=to do nothing but. ³ See Ex. XII. Note ⁹, Part I. ⁴ Translate, when they are denied, and see Ex. III. Note ¹, Part I.; to deny some one something=*refuser quelque chose à quelqu'un.* ⁵ Turn, they fancy themselves to be entitled, and see Ex. LXXV. Note ⁵, Part I. ⁶ Turn, when they are treated, and see Ex. III. Note ¹, Part I. ⁷ *Envers.* See Ex. XXVIII. Note ⁹, Part I. ⁸ To refine upon=*aller plus loin que.* ⁹ To uncover=*dévoiler, découvrir.* ¹⁰ To point out=*indiquer.* ¹¹ See Ex. II. Note ¹², Part II. ¹² To be entitled to is *avoir droit à*; to entitle is *donner droit à.* ¹³ Than have been bestowed upon=*qu'on n'en a accordé à.* *En* means some, any. *Ne* is accounted for by the following rule. Rule.—*Ne* only, must be placed before a verb that comes after *que* (than), preceded by the comparative adverbs *plus, moins, mieux.* Ex.: *He sang last night better than he ever did*=*Il a chanté hier soir mieux qu'il n'a jamais fait.* ¹⁴ See Ex. XI. Note ³, Part I.

V.—LIBERTY AND SLAVERY.

Disguise thyself as thou wilt,¹ still, Slavery, thou art a bitter draught; and though² thousands in all ages³ have been to drink of thee,⁴ thou art no less bitter on that account.⁵ It is thou, Liberty, thrice sweet and gracious goddess, whom

all in public or in private worship, whose taste is grateful, and ever will be so, till⁶ nature herself shall change: no tints of words⁷ can spot thy snowy mantle, or⁸ chymic power turn thy sceptre into iron. With thee to smile upon him as he eats his crust, the swain is happier than his monarch, from whose court thou art exiled. Gracious Heaven! grant me but health, thou great Bestower of it,⁹ and give me but this fair goddess as my companion; and shower down¹⁰ thy mitres, if it seem good unto thy divine providence, upon those heads which are aching for them.¹¹—STERNE.

¹ *As thou wilt*=*comme tu le veux*. ² *Though thousands*. See Ex. LXXII. Note ¹, Part I. *Thousand* (noun)=*millier*. ³ *In all ages*=*de tout temps*. ⁴ *Have been made to drink of thee*=*aient été forcés de boire à ta coupe*. ⁵ *Thou art no less bitter on that account*=*tu n'en es pas moins amère*. ⁶ *Till*. See Ex. III. Note ⁶, Part II. ⁷ *Tint of words*=*calomnie*. ⁸ *Turn, and no chymic power*; *no*=*aucun*, and *ne* must precede the verb. ⁹ *Great Bestower of it*. *Of it* is the pronoun *en*, which must be placed before the verb. In this sentence there is no verb; one must be introduced: *toi qui en es le grand dispensateur*. ¹⁰ *To shower down*=*faire pleuvoir*. ¹¹ *Which are aching for them*=*qui brûlent du désir de les avoir*.

VI.—THE UTILITY OF HISTORY.

The utility of history consists principally in the examples it gives us of the virtues and vices of those who have gone¹ before us; upon which we ought to make the proper observations. History animates and excites us to the love and the practice of virtue, by² showing us the regard and veneration that was always paid³ to great and virtuous men, in the times⁴ in which they lived, and the praise and glory with which their names are perpetuated, and transmitted down⁵ to our times.

The Roman History furnishes more examples

of virtue and magnanimity, or greatness of mind, than any⁶ other. It⁷ was a common thing to see their consuls and dictators (who, you know, were the chief magistrates) taken from the plough, to lead their armies against their enemies, and after victory, returning to their plough again and passing the rest of their lives in modest retirement: a retirement more glorious, if⁸ possible, than the victories which preceded it.

Many of their greatest men died so poor that they were buried at the expense⁹ of the public.

Curius, who had no money of his own,¹⁰ refused a great sum that the Samnites offered him, saying,¹¹ that he saw¹² no glory in¹³ having money himself, but in¹³ commanding those that had.¹⁴ Fabricius, who had often commanded the Roman armies, and as often triumphed over their enemies, was found by¹⁵ his fireside, eating those roots and herbs which he had planted¹⁶ and cultivated¹⁶ himself in his own field. — CHESTERFIELD.

¹ *Aller, to go*, implies an idea of return. When *to go* means *to depart, to set out*, etc., translate it by *partir*. ² See Ex. VII. Note ³, Part I. ³ See Ex. III. Note ¹, Part I. ⁴ *In the times in which* = *à l'époque où*. ⁵ *Down to our times* = *jusqu'à nos jours*. *Up to, down to, as far as*, and *to* (when meaning *as far as*), are translated by *jusqu'à*. ⁶ See Ex. II. Note ³, Part II. ⁷ See Ex. XIII. Note ¹⁴, Part I. ⁸ Turn, *if that were possible*. ⁹ *At the expense* = *aux frais*. ¹⁰ *Who had no money of his own* = *qui n'avait aucune fortune*. ¹¹ *Saying* = *en disant*. *En* is used here, because *he said* . . . at the time *he refused*. When *whilst* or *in* are understood in English before a present participle, the French present participle must be preceded by *en*. Ex.: *QUI is used after a preposition, speaking of persons* = *on emploie QUI après une préposition, EN parlant de personnes*; *he said so, smiling* = *il dit cela EN souriant*. ¹² *He saw*, in the imperfect of the indicative, because *he saw* at the time when *he refused*. See Ex. XVIII. Note ⁶, Part I. ¹³ *à* with the infinitive. ¹⁴ *Those that had some*. *Some* and *any*, used without a noun, are translated by the pronoun *en*, placed before the verb. ¹⁵ *By his fireside* = *au coin de son feu*. ¹⁶ See Ex. III. Note ³, Part I.

VII.—CIVILISATION.

That our civilisation has been a failure is the pronounced opinion of some cynical philosopher of transatlantic origin. Civilisation and savagedom march alongside of each other,¹ and savagedom has hitherto had the best of it.² Christianity has carried its message of peace to the remotest corners of the Old World, and yet at this moment Europe is one great camp. The sound of the armourer's hammer is heard in the land, beating ploughshares into swords. In every shipyard by the sea great war-ships are being fitted out for the fray. The very blood-stained earth has for³ months past shaken under the tread of men in arms; and how soon⁴ the slaughter is to be resumed⁵ no man can foretell. For ages⁶ wise men have begged for⁷ peace. There were peace societies even in Rome; there were peace societies in the time of the Conqueror. There are still peace societies; but all in vain. The 'United States of Europe' are still far off. Science has made brilliant advances in the arts of peace, but the arts of peace are being pressed into the service of the arts of war. The trade of slaughter is more popular than ever, and the destroyer in⁸ a scarlet coat more than ever the calling of an 'officer and a gentleman.' It is a miserable story and a painful subject of thought for men who can allow their conventional ways of thinking to remain long enough in abeyance, to enable them to see what all this means. It is martial glory—military supremacy—great victories—the lordship of the sea, in the language of fools. It is savagedom—butchery—widows and orphans—wounds, torture and death to thousands⁹—homeless and hungry wanderers, and wretchedness unspeakable to

every rightly-reasoning, humane-hearted man.¹⁰—
Echo, Nov. 30, 1876.

¹ *Alongside of each other*=à côté l'une de l'autre; côte à côte.
² *To have the best of it*=avoir l'avantage. ³ *For* (meaning *during*)
 is *pendant*, and *for* (meaning *since*) is *depuis*. *For* is never *pour*,
 when it refers to time. ⁴ *How soon*=quand. *How often*=com-
 bien de fois. ⁵ *Is to be resumed*=recommencera. ⁶ *For ages*=
depuis des siècles. See Note ³ above. ⁷ *To beg for*=demander
instamment. ⁸ *Turn dressed in*. See Ex. XII. Note ⁶, Part I.
⁹ See Ex. V. Note ², Part II. ¹⁰ *Every rightly-reasoning, humane-*
hearted man=tout homme qui a un cœur pour sentir et du bon sens
 pour raisonner.

VIII.—RECEPTION OF JAMES THE SECOND'S QUEEN IN FRANCE.

As soon as the news¹ that² the Queen of
 England was on the French coast had been
 brought to Versailles, a palace was prepared³
 for her reception.⁴ Carriages and troops of
 guards were despatched⁵ to await her orders.
 Workmen were employed to mend⁶ the Calais
 road that⁶ her journey might be easy. Mary
 was on the road towards the French court when
 news¹ came⁷ that her husband had, after a rough
 voyage, landed safe⁸ at the little village of
 Ambleteuse. Persons of high rank were in-
 stantly despatched from Versailles to greet and
 escort him. Meanwhile Lewis, attended⁹ by his
 family and his nobility, went forth in state¹⁰
 to receive the exiled Queen. Before his gorgeous
 coach went the Swiss halberdiers. On each side¹¹
 of it¹² and behind it¹³ rode¹⁴ the body-guards
 with cymbals clashing and trumpets pealing.
 After the King, in a hundred carriages, each
 drawn by six horses, came the most splendid
 aristocracy of Europe, all feathers, ribands,
 jewels, and embroidery. Before¹⁵ the procession
 had gone far it was announced³ that Mary was
 approaching. Lewis alighted and advanced on

foot¹⁶ to meet¹⁷ her. She broke forth into passionate expressions¹⁸ of gratitude. 'Madam,' said her host, 'it is but a melancholy service that I am rendering you to-day. I hope that I may¹⁹ be able hereafter to render you services greater and more pleasing.' He embraced the little Prince of Wales, and made the Queen seat²⁰ herself in the royal state coach on the right hand.²¹ The cavalcade then turned²² towards Saint-Germain.—MACAULAY.

¹ See Ex. XXV. Note ¹³, Part I. ² Turn, of the landing of the Queen of England on the French coast. ³ See Ex. III. Note ¹. ⁴ Turn, to receive her. See Ex. II. Note ⁵, Part I. ⁵ To mend (roads)=réparer. ⁶ That stands for in order that. *Afin que* requires the subjunctive. ⁷ Arriver. ⁸ Safe=sain et sauf. ⁹ Accompany. ¹⁰ En grande cérémonie. ¹¹ On each side=de chaque côté. ¹² A personal pronoun referring to a noun of thing cannot be placed after a preposition. Turn, of the carriage. ¹³ And behind it=ainsi que derrière. ¹⁴ Rode the body-guards=les gardes du corps étaient à cheval. ¹⁵ See Ex. XIX. Note ³, Part I. ¹⁶ On foot=à pied. ¹⁷ To meet is rencontrer, when it means to meet by chance; when it means to meet purposely, it is in French aller à la rencontre de, aller au-devant de. ¹⁸ To break forth (neuter)=éclater. ¹⁹ See Ex. XXVII. Note ¹¹, Part I. ²⁰ To seat oneself=s'asseoir. That infinitive must follow the verb faire immediately (causative voice). Remark.—Reflexive verbs cease to be reflexive after the verb faire. Ex.: He made my father seat himself=il fit asseoir mon père. ²¹ On the right hand=à sa droite. ²² Se diriger.

IX.—SIR CHRISTOPHER HATTON.

Hatton, though¹ he were a² courtier, yet was known by Queen Elizabeth to be an honest man, and was thought by her³ to be not unfit for the place† where conscience hath, or should⁴ have, more place than law. Although¹ some were of opinion⁵ that it was not so much the Queen's own choice as⁶ that she was persuaded to it by some who wished⁷ Hatton not well; both thereby to be a cause of absenting⁸ him from the court and thinking that such⁹ a

sedentary place, to¹⁰ a corpulent man that had been used to exercise, would be a means to shorten his life, and he lived not three years after.—BAKER'S *Chronicle*.

¹ See Ex. I. Note ⁹, Part II. ² See Ex. II. Note ¹², Part II.

³ Turn, yet *Queen Elizabeth knew he was an honest man, and thought that he was not unfit for the place.* ⁴ Here, *should* means *ought to.* ⁵ *To be of opinion*—être d'avis. ⁶ Turn, that it was not the Queen's own choice, but that she had been persuaded to choose thus. ⁷ *To wish some one not well*=en vouloir à quelqu'un; ne pas souhaiter de bien à quelqu'un. ⁸ *Of absenting him from the court*=de l'éloigner de la cour. ⁹ See Ex. XLVIII. Note ⁷, Part I. ¹⁰ pour.

‡ That of Lord Chancellor.

X.—THE LAST WITCHES.

The destruction of the old notions respecting witchcraft was effected between the Restoration and the Revolution—that is to say, in 1660, the majority of educated men still believed in¹ witchcraft; while in 1688 the majority disbelieved it.² In 1665, the old orthodox view was stated by Chief-Baron Hale, who, on a trial³ of two women for witchcraft, said to the jury, 'That there are such⁴ creatures as witches, I make⁵ no doubt at all; for,⁶ first,⁷ the Scriptures have affirmed so much;⁸ secondly, the wisdom of all nations hath provided laws against such persons, which⁹ is an argument of confidence of such a crime.' This reasoning was irresistible, and the witches were hung: but the change in public opinion began to affect even the judges, and after this melancholy exhibition of the Chief-Baron's, such scenes became gradually rarer. Three persons were executed at Exeter for witchcraft in 1682, and Hutchinson says, 'I suppose these are the three last that have been¹⁰ hanged in England.' Dr. Parr, however, states that two

witches were hung at Northampton in 1705; and that in 1712 five other witches suffered the same fate at the same place. This is all the more¹¹ shameful, because a disbelief in the existence of witches had become almost universal among educated men; though¹² the old superstition was well defended on the judgment-seat¹³ and in the pulpit. However, all was in vain; every year diminished the old belief; and in 1736 the laws against witchcraft were repealed,¹⁴ and another vestige of superstition effaced from the English statute-book.—BUCKLE'S *History of Civilisation in England*.

¹ To believe in=croire à. ² To it=y, before the verb. ³ On a trial of two women for witchcraft=Dans un procès où deux femmes étaient accusées de sorcellerie. ⁴ Turn, creatures such as. Such as=tel que. ⁵ I make no doubt at all=je ne doute point, sentence which should be placed before that there are, etc., and see Rule 4, Ex. VII. Part I. ⁶ See Ex. XXIV. Note 3, Part I. ⁷ See Ex. I. Note 18, Part II. ⁸ Turn, the Scriptures have affirmed it. ⁹ Which is not here qui or que, because it does not relate to one particular noun expressed before; it refers to the whole sentence, the wisdom of all nations hath provided laws against such persons. Which is here ce qui (that which), it should be ce que, if in the accusative. ¹⁰ See Ex. XXXVIII. Note 10, Part I. ¹¹ All the more... because=d'autant plus... que. ¹² See Ex. I. Note 9, Part II. ¹³ Judgment-seat=tribunal. ¹⁴ To repeal=abroger.

XI.—AN AMIABLE JUDGE.

Justice Graham was the most polite judge that ever adorned¹ the bench. On one occasion it was said he had hastily condemned a man, who had been capitally convicted,² to transportation, when the clerk of the court, in a whisper, set³ him right. 'Oh!' he exclaimed, 'criminal, I beg your pardon; come back': and putting on the black cap courteously apologised⁴ for the mistake, and consigned him to the gallows, to be hanged by the neck until⁵ he was dead. To one found

guilty of burglary, he would⁶ say: 'My honest friend, you are found guilty of felony, for which it is my painful duty,' etc. Among other peculiarities he had a custom of repeating the answers made to him,⁷ as illustrated in the following dialogue:—'My good friend, you are charged⁸ with murder: what have you to observe on the subject?' 'Eh! my lord?' 'Eh! How did it happen?' 'Why, my lord, Jem aggravated me, and swore he would knock⁹ the breath out of my body.' 'Good; he would knock the breath out of your body; and what did you reply!' 'Nothing; I floored him.' 'Good; and then . . . ' 'Why, then, my lord, they took¹⁰ him up and found that his head was cut open.' 'His head was cut open; good; and what followed?'¹¹ 'After that, my lord, they gathered him up to take¹² him to the hospital, but he died on the road.' 'He died on the road; *very good.*'—*London Review.*

¹ See Ex. XXXVIII. Note ¹⁰, Part I. ² *Capitally convicted* = *déclaré coupable d'assassinat.* ³ *Set him right* = *lui expliqua l'erreur qu'il avait commise.* ⁴ *To apologise for* = *s'excuser de.* ⁵ See Ex. III. Note ⁶, Part II. ⁶ *He would say.* *Would* is not translated by a *conditional*, when used as a sign of an *imperfect*, i.e. an habitual action. *He would say* = *disait.* ⁷ *Made to him* = *qu'on lui faisait.* See Ex. III. Note ¹, Part I. ⁸ *To be charged with* = *être accusé de.* ⁹ *He would knock my breath out of my body* = *il me tuerait.* ¹⁰ *To take up* = *relever, ramasser.* ¹¹ *And what followed?* = *et qu'arriva-t-il ensuite?* ¹² *To take some one somewhere* = *mener, conduire quelqu'un quelque part.*

XII.—LOOK ON THIS PICTURE, AND THEN ON THAT.

'Father is coming!' and little round faces grow long,¹ and merry voices are hushed, and toys are hustled² into the closet; and mamma glances³ nervously at the door; and baby is bribed⁴ with a lump of sugar to keep the peace; and father's business-face relaxes not a muscle; and the little

group huddle like timid sheep in a corner, and tea is despatched as silently as if⁶ speaking was prohibited by the statute-book; and the children creep like culprits to bed, marvelling⁶ that baby dare crow so loud, now that 'Father has come.'

'Father is coming!' and bright eyes sparkle⁷ for joy; and tiny feet dance with glee; and eager faces press against the window-pane; and rosy lips claim kisses at the door; and picture-books lie unheeded⁸ on the table; and tops, and balls, and dolls, and kites,⁹ are discussed; and little Susy lays her soft cheeks against the paternal whiskers with the most fearless *abandon*; and Charley gets a love-pat¹⁰ for his medal; and mamma's face grows radiant; and the evening paper¹¹ is read¹²—not silently, but aloud—and tea, and toast, and time vanish with equal celerity, for jubilee has¹³ arrived and 'Father has¹³ come!'—
FANNY FERN.

¹ To grow long = *s'allonger*. ² To hustle = *jeter pêle-mêle*. See Ex. III. Note ¹, Part I. ³ To glance at = *jeter un regard sur*. ⁴ To bribe = *suborner, gagner*. ⁵ As if speaking was prohibited = *que s'il était défendu de parler*. ⁶ To marvel = *s'étonner*. See Ex. VII. Note ⁴, Part I. ⁷ To sparkle for joy = *étinceler de joie*. Remark.—Verbs in *eler* and *eter* double the *l* or the *t* before an *e* mute. ⁸ To lie unheeded = *rester abandonné*. ⁹ Kite = *cerf-volant* (pl. *cerfs-volants*). ¹⁰ Love-pat = *une petite tape*. ¹¹ Evening paper = *journal du soir*. ¹² See Ex. III. Note ¹, Part I. ¹³ The verbs *aller, arriver, mourir, rester, partir, sortir, venir, tomber*, etc., are conjugated with the auxiliary *être* in their compound tenses.

XIII.—ESCHINES AND DEMOSTHENES.

Once on a time,¹ a statesman, in the shock and contest of parties, prevailed² so far as³ to procure, by his eloquence, the banishment of an able adversary; whom he secretly followed, offering him money for his support during his exile, and soothing him with topics of consolation in his

misfortune. 'Alas!' cries the banished statesman, 'with what regret must⁴ I leave my friends in this city, where even enemies are so generous!' Virtue, though in⁵ an enemy, here pleased him: and we also give it the just tribute of praise and approbation; nor⁶ do we retract these sentiments, when we hear⁷ that the action passed⁸ at Athens about two thousand years ago,⁹ and that the persons' names were Eschines and Demosthenes.—D. HUME.

¹ Once on a time=*une fois*. ² L'emporter, obtenir l'avantage.

³ *A ce point que* (with the indicative), or *jusqu'à* (prep. with the infinitive). ⁴ *Dois-je*. ⁵ *In*, before a noun of persons, and not referring to the body, but to the soul, the mind, is translated by *chez*, sometimes by *en*; never by *dans*, which means *within*, *inside of*.

⁶ *Nor do we retract these sentiments*=*et nous ne rétractons pas non plus ces sentiments*. ⁷ *Apprendre*. See Ex. LVI. Note ⁸, Part I.

⁸ *Passed*=*se passait*. ⁹ *About two thousand years ago*=*Il y a environ deux mille ans*. See Ex. V. Note ⁷, Part I.

XIV.—THE AGE OF CHIVALRY.

Between the age of Charlemagne and that of the Crusades, a revolution took place¹ among² the Spaniards, Normans, and French, which gradually extended itself to the rest of Europe. The service of the infantry was degraded³ to the plebeians; the cavalry formed the strength of the armies; and the honourable name of '*miles*,' or soldier, was confined solely to the⁴ gentlemen who served on horseback, and who were invested with⁵ the character of knighthood.

The dukes and counts, who had usurped the rights of sovereignty, divided the provinces among their faithful barons; the barons distributed among their vassals the fiefs, or benefices, of their jurisdiction; and these military tenants, the peers of each other,⁶ and of their lord, composed the noble or equestrian order,

that disdained to conceive the peasants, or burghers, as of the same species as themselves. The dignity of their birth was preserved by pure and equal alliances; their sons, alone, who could⁷ produce four quarters, or lines of ancestry, without spot or⁸ reproach, might⁷ legally pretend to the honour of knighthood; but a valiant plebeian was sometimes enriched and ennobled⁹ by the sword, and became the father of a new race. A single knight could⁷ impart, according to his judgment, the character which he received, and the warlike sovereigns of Europe derived more glory from this personal distinction than from the lustre of their diadem.—GIBBON.

¹ To take place=*avoir lieu*. ² Among (nations)=*chez*. ³ Degraded to=*donner à . . . en signe d'avilissement*. ⁴ Confined solely to the=*ne fut donné qu'aux*. ⁵ Invested with=*revêtu de*. See Ex. XII. Note ⁹, Part I. ⁶ See Remark, Ex. LXXV. Note ³, Part I. ⁷ See Ex. XXXIII. Note ³, Part I. ⁸ *ni*. ⁹ To ennoble=*ennoblir*, when it means to make more illustrious: *Les beaux arts ennoblissent une langue* (Académie); and *anoblir*, when it means to give titles of nobility: *Le roi seul peut anoblir* (Académie).

XV.—A BILL OF COSTS.

A worthy old gentleman in the country, having employed an attorney, of whom he had a pretty¹ good opinion, to do some law business for him in London, was greatly surprised, on his coming² to town, and demanding³ his bill of law charges, to find out⁴ it amounted to at least three times the sum he expected; the honest attorney assuring him that there was no article in his bill that was⁵ not⁶ fair and reasonable. 'Nay,' said the country gentleman, 'there is one of them⁷ which, I am sure, cannot be so,⁸ for⁹ you have put down three shillings and fourpence for going to Southwark, when none of my business lay¹⁰ that way;¹¹ pray, what is the meaning of that,¹² sir?' 'Oh! sir,'

said he, 'that's for fetching the turkey that you sent me for a present from the country.'—JOE MILLER.

¹ *Pretty* (adverb)=*assez*. ² *Quand il vint*. ³ *Et qu'il demanda*. See Ex. XVII. Note ⁵, Part I. ⁴ *Trouver, découvrir*. ⁵ See Ex. XXXVIII. Rule ¹⁰, Part I. ⁶ See Ex. XXXVIII. Note ¹¹, Part I. ⁷ *Of them*=*en*, before the verb. ⁸ *So*=*le*, before the verb *être*. ⁹ See Ex. XXIV. Note ³, Part I. ¹⁰ *To lie*=*se trouver*. ¹¹ *This way*=*par ici, dans cette direction-ci; that way*=*par là, dans cette direction-là*. ¹² *What is the meaning of that?*=*qu'est-ce que cela signifie?*

XVI.—THE VICAR OF WAKEFIELD'S NEIGHBOURS.

The place of our retreat was in a little neighbourhood, consisting of¹ farmers, who tilled their own grounds, and were equal² strangers to opulence and poverty. As they had almost all the conveniences of life within themselves,³ they seldom visited towns or cities in search of⁴ superfluities. Remote from the polite,⁵ they still retained the primeval simplicity of manners; and frugal by habit, they scarce knew that temperance was a virtue. They wrought with cheerfulness on* days of labour: but observed festivals as intervals of idleness and pleasure. They kept up⁶ the Christmas carol, sent true loveknots on Valentine morning,⁷ ate pancakes on Shrovetide,⁸ showed their wit on⁹ the first of April, and religiously cracked nuts on Michaelmas eve.¹⁰ Being apprised of our approach, the whole neighbourhood came out to meet¹¹ their minister, dressed in¹² their fine clothes, and preceded by a pipe and tabor; a feast also was provided for our reception, at which we sat cheerfully down; and what the conversation¹³ wanted in wit, was made up in laughter.¹¹—OLIVER GOLDSMITH.

¹ *Consister en*. ² Translate *equally* (the adverb). ³ *Within themselves*=*chez eux*. ⁴ *In search of*=*à la recherche de*. ⁵ *Remote from*

the polite=*éloignés des vices de la civilisation*. ⁶ *Observer*. ⁷ *Sent true loveknots on Valentine morning*=*s'envoyaient des nœuds d'amour à la Saint-Valentin*. ⁸ *On Shrovetide*=*le mardi-gras*. ⁹ *On* is never translated in dates; *of*, before the name of the month, is not translated either. Besides, the cardinal numbers are used, not the ordinal, as in English. The ordinal number *premier*, however, is used, and is an exception to the foregoing rule. ¹⁰ *On Michaelmas eve*=*à la Saint-Michel*. ¹¹ See Ex. VIII. Note ¹⁷, Part II. ¹² See Ex. XII. Note ⁶, Part I. ¹³ *And what the conversation wanted in wit*=*et ce qui manqua à la conversation au point de vue de l'esprit*. ¹⁴ *Was made up in laughter*=*fut suppléé par la gaieté*.

XVII.—THE VICAR OF WAKEFIELD'S HOUSE.

Our little habitation was situated at the foot of a sloping hill, sheltered with ¹ a beautiful under-wood ² behind, ³ and a prattling river before; ⁴ on one side ⁵ a meadow, on the other a green. My farm consisted of ⁶ about twenty acres of excellent land, having given a hundred pounds for my predecessor's good-will. Nothing could exceed the neatness of my little enclosures, the elms and hedge-rows appearing with inexpressible beauty. My house consisted of ⁶ but one story, and was covered with ⁷ thatch, which ⁸ gave it an air of great snugness; the walls on the inside ⁹ were nicely whitewashed, and my daughters undertook to adorn them with ¹⁰ pictures of their own designing. Though ¹¹ the same room served us for parlour and kitchen, that only made it the warmer; besides, as it was kept ¹² with the utmost neatness, the dishes, plates, and coppers, ¹³ being well scoured, and all disposed in bright rows on the shelves, the eye was agreeably relieved, ¹⁴ and did not want richer furniture. There were three other apartments: ¹⁵ one for my wife and me; another for our two daughters; and the third, with two beds, for the rest of the children.—
OLIVER GOLDSMITH.

¹ *Par.* ² *Underwood* = *taillis*. ³ *Behind* (adv. of place) = *par-derrière*. ⁴ *Before* (adv. of place) = *par-devant*; *before* (adv. of time) = *auparavant*. ⁵ See Ex. VIII. Note ¹¹, Part II. ⁶ See Ex. XVI. Note ¹, Part II. ⁷ See Ex. XII. Note ⁹, Part I. ⁸ See Ex. X. Note ⁹, Part II. ⁹ *À l'intérieur*. ¹⁰ See Ex. XII. Note ⁹, Part I. ¹¹ Turn, it is true that . . . ; but that only made it warmer. ¹² *Entretenu*. ¹³ *Coppers* = *casseroles*. ¹⁴ *The eye was agreeably relieved* = *la vue était agréablement reposée*. ¹⁵ *Apartments* = *chambres*.

XVIII.—MARY QUEEN OF SCOTS.

To all the charms of beauty, Mary added those accomplishments¹ which render their impression irresistible. Polite, affable, insinuating, sprightly, and capable of speaking and of writing with equal ease and dignity. Sudden, however, and violent in all her attachments; because her heart was warm and unsuspicious. Impatient of² contradiction, because she had been accustomed from her infancy to be treated as a queen. No stranger, on some occasions, to dissimulation; which, in that perfidious court, where she received her education, was reckoned among the necessary arts of government. Not insensible to flattery, or unconscious of that pleasure, with which almost every woman beholds the influence of her own beauty. Formed with the qualities that we love, not with the talents that we admire, she was an agreeable woman, rather than an illustrious queen.

The vivacity of her spirit, not sufficiently tempered with³ sound judgment, and the warmth of her heart, which was not at all times⁴ under the restraint of discretion,⁵ betrayed her both⁶ into errors and into crimes. To say that she was always unfortunate will not account for⁷ that long and almost uninterrupted succession of calamities which befell her; we must likewise add that she was often imprudent.

Mary's sufferings exceed, both⁶ in degree and in

duration, those tragical distresses, which fancy has feigned, to excite sorrow and commiseration; and while we survey⁸ them, we are apt⁹ altogether to forget her frailties; we think of her faults with less indignation, and approve of our tears, as if they were shed for a person, who had attained much nearer to pure virtue.—ROBERTSON.

¹ *Accomplishments=talents.* ² See Ex. XXIV. Note ²¹, Part I.
³ *Tempered with=modéré par.* ⁴ *At all times=toujours.* ⁵ *Under the restraint of discretion=gouverné par la prudence.* ⁶ *Both=et.*
⁷ *To account for=expliquer.* ⁸ *To survey=considérer attentivement.*
⁹ See Ex. II. Note ¹³, Part II.

XIX.—ELDON AT OXFORD.

When John Scott, afterwards Lord Eldon, joined his brother William at Oxford, he was soon entered as a fellow-commoner; and showed himself so well prepared with a variety of classical and general information¹ that he had not been a year² at college before³ he stood for⁴ and won a fellowship open to natives⁵ of Northumberland. While⁶ an undergraduate, John had a narrow escape⁷ of his life. He was skating on Christ Church meadow, and venturing on a portion of it but weakly frozen,⁸ fell into a ditch deep enough to⁹ allow him to sink to¹⁰ the neck. When he had scrambled out,¹¹ and¹² was dripping from the collar and oozing from the stockings, a brandy vendor shuffled towards him, and recommended a glass of something¹³ warm; upon which¹⁴ Edward Norton, of University College, sweeping past, cried out to the retailer, 'None of your brandy for that wet young man; he never drinks but¹⁵ when¹⁶ he is *dry*.'—Twiss's *Life of Lord Eldon*.

¹ *Connaissances.* ² *He had not been a year=il n'y avait pas un an qu'il était.* ³ *Que.* ⁴ *He stood for and won a fellowship=il se présenta comme candidat pour une place de membre d'un collège.*

... et l'emporta, la gagna. ⁵ Natives of N.=personnes nées dans le N. ⁶ Translate, *When he was an undergraduate.* ⁷ J. had a narrow escape of his life= *la vie de J. fut en danger extrême.* ⁸ Of it but weakly frozen=*qui n'était que faiblement gelée.* ⁹ Enough... to=assez... pour. ¹⁰ to, meaning here as far as=jusqu'à. ¹¹ To scramble out=sortir avec beaucoup de difficulté. ¹² See Ex. XVII. Note⁵, Part I. ¹³ See Ex. LIX. Note², Part I. ¹⁴ Which=quoi, after a preposition. ¹⁵ but=ne... que. ¹⁶ When is indifferently *quand* or *lorsque*, except in interrogative sentences, where *when* is always *quand*. Ex.: *When shall you come?* = *quand viendrez-vous?* Note.—After *que*, *qui*, *car*, *quoique*, etc., *lorsque* is preferred to *quand*, for the sake of euphony. *Qui quand*, *car quand*, sound most disagreeably to the ear.

XX.—DEATH OF MARAT.

Hark, a rap again!¹ A musical woman's voice, refusing to be rejected²: it is the citoyenne who would³ do France a service. Marat, recognising from within,⁴ cries, 'Admit her.' Charlotte Corday is admitted.

'Citoyen Marat, I am from Caen, the seat of rebellion, and wish to speak with you.' 'Be seated, *mon enfant*. Now what are the traitors doing at Caen? What deputies are at Caen?' Charlotte names some deputies. 'Their heads shall fall within⁵ a fortnight,' croaks the eager people's friend, clutching his tablets to write: Barbaroux, Pétion, writes he with bare, shrunk arm, turning aside⁶ in the bath: Pétion, and Louvet, and— Charlotte has drawn her knife from the sheath; plunges it, with⁷ one sure stroke, into the writer's heart. 'A moi, chère amie, Help, dear!' no more⁸ could the death-choked say or shriek. The helpful washerwoman running in, there is no Friend of the People, or Friend of the Washerwoman, left, but his life with a groan gushes out, indignant, to the shades below.—THOMAS CARLYLE, *French Revolution*.

¹ A rap again!=on frappe encore. ² Refusing to be rejected=refusant qu'on, with the subjunctive. ³ Would=désire, voudrait.

⁴ *From within* = *de l'intérieur*. ⁵ *Within a fortnight* = *avant quinze jours*. ⁶ *To turn* (active) = *tourner*; *to turn* (neuter) = *se tourner*; *aside* = *de côté*. ⁷ *D'une main sûre*. See Ex. XII. Note ⁹, Part I. ⁸ *No more could the death-choked say or shriek* = *celui que la mort étouffait ne put parler ni crier davantage*.

XXI.—VICTOR HUGO'S DRAMAS.

Events in Hugo's dramas are rapid, impressive, full of action and fire; they all¹ bear the traces of their birth. No modern literature, none² at least³ since the death of Scott, can show stories full of such⁴ various and, as may be said, Titanic force,⁵ now⁶ angry in resistance to society and destiny, now delicately graceful as a flower or a child. If⁷ Victor Hugo had touched only one of the many strings, if he had only been lyricist, dramatist, or novelist, he would still have ranked with⁸ the chief French writers. But adding, as he does,⁹ variety and abundance to quality, it¹⁰ is not easy to see how any¹¹ other French poet can be placed¹² beside him.—*Daily News*, Feb. 27, 1877.

¹ See Ex. XIX. Note ⁴, Part I. ² *Aucun*. ³ *At least* = *au moins*. Translate this expression, however, by *au moins*, when it refers to number. Ex.: *Give me AT LEAST ten shillings* = *donnez-moi AU MOINS dix schellings*. ⁴ See Ex. XLVIII. Note ⁷, Part I. ⁵ See Ex. XI. Note ³, Part I. ⁶ *Now . . . now*; *sometimes . . . sometimes* = *tantôt . . . tantôt*. ⁷ In the past, always write the imperfect of the indicative after *if*, even if it had the form of a conditional in English. Ex.: *If it should be fine* = *s'il faisait beau*. ⁸ *Il aurait encore été placé or compté parmi*. ⁹ *Comme il le fait*. ¹⁰ See Ex. XVI. Note ⁷, Part I. ¹¹ *Aucun*. ¹² See Ex. III. Note ¹, Part I.

XXII.—THE TRIAL¹ OF CHARLOTTE CORDAY.

On Wednesday morning the thronged Palais de Justice and Revolutionary Tribunal can see her face—beautiful and calm: she dates it 'fourth day of the Preparation of Peace.' A strange murmur ran through the Hall, at sight of her,²

you could not say of what character. Tinville has his indictments: the cutler of the Palais Royal will testify that he sold her the sheath-knife; 'All these details are needless,' interrupted Charlotte; 'it is I that killed³ Marat.' 'By whose instigation?' 'By no one's.'⁵ 'What tempted you, then?' 'His crimes.' 'I killed one man,' added she, raising⁶ her voice extremely, as⁷ they went on⁸ with their questions—'I killed one man to⁹ save a hundred thousand;¹⁰ a villain to save innocents; a savage wild-beast to give repose to my country. I was a¹¹ Republican before the Revolution; I never wanted¹² energy.' There is nothing to be said.¹³ The public gazes astonished: the hasty limners sketch her features, Charlotte not disapproving:¹⁴ the men of law proceed with their formalities. The doom is death as a¹¹ murderer.—THOMAS CARLYLE, *French Revolution*.

¹ *Trial*=procès. ² *At sight of her*=quand on l'a perçut. ³ *C'est moi qui ai tué*. ⁴ *By whose instigation*=à l'instigation de qui. Note.—You never begin a question by *dont*. Ex.: *Whose book is this*=à qui est ce livre. Besides, *dont* is a relative pronoun, and in the sentence⁴, *whose* cannot be translated by *dont*, as it relates to no noun expressed before. ⁵ *By no one's*=à l'instigation de personne. See the question⁴ above. ⁶ *Raising her voice*=en élevant la voix. See Ex. VI. Note¹¹, Part II. ⁷ *As*=à mesure que, when an action goes on at the same time as another. Ex.: *The enemy withdrew, as we advanced*=l'ennemi se retirait à mesure que nous avançons. ⁸ *To go on with*=continuer. ⁹ See Ex. II. Note⁵, Part I. ¹⁰ Translate, *a hundred-thousand of them*. See Ex. LXXIV. Note⁷, Part I. ¹¹ See Ex. II. Note¹², Part II. ¹² *To want*=manquer de. Turn, *I have never wanted energy*, and remember that in a negative sentence the partitive article is always *de*, or *d'* before a noun beginning with an *e* mute or a silent *h*. ¹³ *There is nothing to be said*=il n'y a rien à dire. Cf. *House to be sold*=maison à vendre. ¹⁴ *C. not disapproving*=C. ne s'y opposant pas.

XXIII.—A GOOD COMPARISON.

During the assizes, in a case of assault and battery, where a stone had been thrown by the

defendant,¹ the following² clear and conclusive³ evidence was drawn out of a witness:

'Did you see⁴ the defendant throw the stone?'
'I saw a stone, and I was pretty sure defendant threw it.'

'Was⁵ it a large stone?' 'I should say⁶ it was a large stone.'

'Can't you say how⁷ big it was?' 'I should say it was a stone of some⁸ bigness.'

'Can't you give the jury some idea of the stone?' 'Why, as near as I recollect,⁹ it was something of a stone.'

'Can't you compare it to some other object?'
'Why, if I were to compare it,¹⁰ so as to¹¹ give some notion of the stone, I should say it was as large as lump of chalk.'—LORD BROUGHAM.

¹ *Défendeur=accusé.* In civil lawsuits *défendant* is *défendeur*, *défenderesse*; *plaintiff* or *applicant* is *demandeur*, *demanderesse*.

² To be placed after the noun. ³ *Aussi claire que concluante.* Evidence (in trials)=*déposition*. ⁴ Turn, *have you seen?* ⁵ In the imperfect of the indicative. *Was it*, at the time when *you saw it*.

⁶ *Je crois que.* ⁷ *How big it was=de quelle grosseur elle était.*

⁸ *Certain.* ⁹ *As near as I recollect=autant que je puis me rappeler.* To the best of my belief=*autant que je puis croire.* ¹⁰ *If I were to compare it=si j'avais à faire une comparaison.* ¹¹ *So as to=de manière à*, followed by the infinitive.

XXIV.—A VISIT TO BEDLAM.

The unfortunate young lady¹ had till now² seemed entranced in thought,³ with⁴ her eyes fixed on a little garnet ring she wore on her finger:⁵ she turned them now⁶ upon Harley. 'Willy is no more!' said she, 'do you weep for my Willy? Blessings⁷ on your tears! I would⁸ weep too, but my brain is dry; and it burns, it burns, it burns!' She drew nearer⁹ to Harley. 'Be comforted, young lady,' said he, 'your Willy is in heaven.' 'Is he, indeed, and shall we meet¹⁰

again? And shall that frightful man (pointing to¹¹ the keeper) not be there? Alas! I am grown naughty of late: I have almost forgotten to think of heaven; yet I pray sometimes; when I can,¹² I pray, and sometimes I sing; when I am saddest, I sing. You shall hear me; hush!

“Light be the earth on Willy’s breast,
And green the sod that wraps his grave!”

There was a plaintive wildness¹³ in the air not¹⁴ to be withstood; and except the keepers, there was not an unmoistened eye¹⁵ around her.—MAC-KENZIE.

¹ *Young lady*=jeune fille. ² *Jusqu’alors*. Now is translated by *alors* in time past. ³ *Entranced in thought*=plongée dans une profonde méditation. ⁴ See Ex. XXIX. Note ³, Part I. ⁵ *On her finger*=au doigt. ⁶ See ² above. ⁷ *Blessings on your tears*=que vos larmes soient bénies! ⁸ *I would*=je voudrais. The verb *vouloir* is used and not the conditional of *to weep*, because some emphasis is laid on *would*. ⁹ *To draw near to*=s’approcher de. ¹⁰ See Ex. V. Note ⁴, Part I. ¹¹ *To point*=indiquer; *montrer au doigt*. ¹² *When I can*=quand je le peux; *quand cela m’est possible*. ¹³ *There was a plaintive wildness*=il y avait quelque chose de plaintif et de sauvage. See Ex. LIX. Note ², Part I. ¹⁴ *Not to be withstood*=auquel on ne pouvait pas résister. ¹⁵ *There was not an unmoistened eye around her*=il n’y avait pas autour d’elle un seul œil qui ne fût humide. See Ex. XXXVIII. Notes ¹⁰ and ¹¹, Part I.

XXV.—THE MISANTHROPIST.

The education of your youth is preposterous: you waste at school years in¹ improving talents, without ever having spent an hour¹ discovering them; one promiscuous line of instruction is followed,² without regard to³ genius, capacity, or probable situation in the commonwealth. From this bear-garden of the pedagogue, a raw unprincipled boy is turned loose⁴ upon the world to travel, without any ideas but⁵ those of improving his dress at Paris, or starting into taste,

by⁶ gazing on some paintings at Rome. Ask him about⁷ the manners of the people, and he will tell you, that the skirt is worn⁸ much shorter in France, and that everybody eats macaroni in Italy. When he returns home,⁹ he buys a seat in¹⁰ Parliament, and studies the constitution at Arthur's.¹¹—MACKENZIE.

¹ *À*, with the infinitive. ² See Ex. III. Note ¹, Part I. ³ *Without regard to*=*sans avoir égard à*. ⁴ *To turn loose*=*lâcher*; *laisser aller librement*. ⁵ *Any ... but*=*d'autre ... que*. ⁶ See Ex. VII. Note ³, Part I. ⁷ *Ask him about*=*faites-lui des questions au sujet de*. ⁸ See Ex. III. Note ¹, Part I. ⁹ *Home*=*chez lui*. ¹⁰ *In*=*au*. See Ex. V. Note ⁵, Part I. ¹¹ See Ex. XIII. Note ¹⁷, Part I.

XXVI.—WACKFORD SQUEERS, ESQ.

Mr. Squeers's appearance was not prepossessing. He had but one eye, and the popular prejudice runs in favour of two. The eye he had was unquestionably useful but decidedly not ornamental: being of a greenish grey,¹ and in shape² resembling³ the fanlight of a street-door. The blank side of his face was much wrinkled and puckered up, which⁴ gave him a very sinister appearance, especially when he smiled, at which times⁵ his expression bordered closely on⁶ the villainous. His hair was very flat and shiny, save at the ends,⁷ where it was brushed stiffly up⁸ from a low protruding forehead, which assorted well with his harsh voice and coarse manner. He was⁹ about two- or three-and-fifty, and a trifle below the middle¹⁰ size; he wore a white neckerchief with¹¹ long ends, and a suit of scholastic black; but his coat-sleeves being a great deal¹² too long, and his trousers a great deal too short, he appeared ill at ease¹³ in his clothes, and as if he were in a perpetual state of astonishment at¹⁴ finding himself so respectable.—CHARLES DICKENS.

¹ *Of a greenish grey*=*d'un gris verdâtre*. ² *In shape*=*par la forme*. ³ *To resemble*=*ressembler à*. ⁴ See Ex. X. Note ⁵, Part II. ⁵ *Moments*. ⁶ *Bordered closely on*=*touchait de près à; frisait*. ⁷ *Bout*. ⁸ *Brossé droit en l'air*. ⁹ *Il avait environ cinquante-deux ou cinquante-trois ans*. ¹⁰ *The middle size*=*la taille moyenne*. ¹¹ *With long ends*=*à longs bouts (with=à, before a noun attribute)*. ¹² *A great deal*=*beaucoup*. ¹³ *Ill at ease*=*mal à son aise*. ¹⁴ *Finding himself*=*de se trouver*.

XXVII.—STERNE AND THE MONK.

As I pronounced the word *great claims* (poverty), he gave a slight glance with his eyes downwards¹ upon the sleeve of his tunic. I felt the full force of the appeal. 'I acknowledge it,' said I, 'a coarse habit, and that² but³ once in three years, with meagre diet—are no great matters: and the true point of pity is, as they can be earned⁴ in the world with so little industry, that your order should wish⁵ to procure them, by⁶ pressing upon a fund, which is the property of the lame, the blind, the aged, and the infirm; and had you been⁷ of the *Order of Mercy*, instead of the *Order of St. Francis*, poor as I am,'⁸ continued I, pointing⁹ to my portmanteau, 'full cheerfully should it have been opened to you for the ransom of the unfortunate.' The monk made me a bow. 'But of all others,' resumed I, 'the unfortunate of our own country, surely, have the first rights; and I have left thousands in distress upon our own shore.' The monk gave a cordial wave with his head¹⁰—as much¹¹ as to say: No doubt there is misery enough¹² in every corner of the world, as well as within our convent. 'But we distinguish,' said I, laying¹³ my hand upon the sleeve of his tunic, in return for his appeal—'we distinguish, my good father, betwixt those who wish only to eat the bread of their own labour, and those who eat the bread of other people's, and have

no other¹⁴ plan in life, but to get through it¹⁵ in sloth and ignorance *for the love of God.*—
STERNE.

¹ *He gave a slight glance with his eyes downwards*=*il jeta un léger coup d'œil.* ² *This*=*ceci*, when meaning this thing; *that*=*cela*, when meaning *that thing*. ³ *But, only*=*seulement.* ⁴ See Ex. III. Note ¹, Part I. ⁵ *Should wish to procure them*=*désire se les procurer.* ⁶ See Ex. VII. Note ³, Part I. ⁷ *Turn, and if you had been.* ⁸ *Poor as I am*=*tout pauvre que je suis*; no doubt, no subjunctive. Note.—*Quelque pauvre que je sois* would mean *however poor I may be*. There is here some doubt entertained, and the subjunctive is used. ⁹ See Ex. XXIV. Note ¹¹, Part II. ¹⁰ *Gave a cordial wave with his head*=*secoua la tête cordialement.* ¹¹ *As much as to say*=*comme pour dire.* ¹² *Turn, enough misery*, and see Rule Ex. XI. Note ¹⁷, Part I. ¹³ *Laying my hand*=*posant la main.* ¹⁴ *Have no other . . . but*=*n'ont d'autre . . . que.* ¹⁵ *To get through it*=*de passer leur vie.*

XXVIII.—RURAL LIFE.

The foreigner who would¹ form a correct opinion of the English character must not confine² his observations to the metropolis. He must go forth into the country; he must sojourn in villages and hamlets; he must visit castles, villas, farm-houses, and cottages; he must wander through parks and gardens, along hedges and green lanes; he must loiter about country churches, attend³ wakes and fairs, and other rural festivals; and cope with the people in all their conditions, and all their habits and humours.

It is in the country that the Englishman gives scope⁴ to his natural feelings. He gladly breaks loose⁵ from the cold formalities and negative civilities of town, throws off his habits of shy reserve, and becomes joyous and freehearted. He manages to collect round him all the conveniences and elegancies of polite life and banish its⁶ restraints. His country-seat abounds with every requisite, either for studious retirement,

tasteful gratification, or rural exercise. Books, paintings, music, horses, dogs, and sporting implements of all kinds are at hand.⁷ He puts no constraint,⁸ either⁹ upon his guests or himself, but, in the true spirit of hospitality, provides the means of enjoyment, and leaves every one to partake according to his own inclination.—WASHINGTON IRVING.

¹ Emphasis is laid on *would*, use the verb *vouloir*. ² *Must not confine his observations to the metropolis*=*ne doit pas se borner à observer la ville*. ³ *To attend*=*aller voir*. ⁴ *To give scope*=*donner libre carrière*. ⁵ *=to break loose=s'affranchir*. ⁶ See Ex. XXXII. Note ⁶, Part I. ⁷ *At hand*=*à sa disposition, près de lui, sous la main*. ⁸ *He puts no constraint*=*il n'impose de contrainte*. ⁹ *Either . . . or=soit . . . soit; soit . . . ou*, in affirmative sentences; *ni . . . ni*, with *ne* before the verb, in negative sentences.

XXIX.—REFLECT BEFORE YOU ACT.

A certain Cham of Tartary going a progress¹ with his nobles, was met by a dervise who cried with² a loud voice: 'Whoever will give me a hundred pieces of gold, I will give him a piece* of* advice.'

The Cham ordered³ him the sum; upon which the dervise said: 'Begin nothing of which⁴ thou hast⁵ not⁶ well considered the end.'

The courtiers, upon hearing this plain sentence, smiled, and said with a sneer: 'The dervise is well paid for his maxim.'

But the king was so well satisfied with² the answer, that he ordered it⁷ to be written in golden letters in several places of his palace, and engraved on all his plate. Not long after,⁸ the king's surgeon was bribed⁹ to kill him with a poisoned lancet at the time he let him blood.

One day, when the king's arm was bound, and¹⁰ the fatal lancet in the surgeon's hand, he

read on the basin: 'Begin nothing of which thou hast not well considered the end.' He immediately started, and let¹¹ the lancet fall out of his hands. The king observed his confusion and inquired¹² the reason; the surgeon fell prostrate, confessed the whole affair, was pardoned, and the conspirators died. The Cham, turning¹³ to his courtiers, told them: 'That counsel could not be too much valued, which had saved a king's life.'—*The Spectator*.

¹ *Going a progress*=*étant en voyage*. ² See Ex. XII. Note ², Part I. ³ *Ordered him the sum*=*ordonna qu'on lui donnât la somme*. ⁴ *Of which*=*dont*. ⁵ Use the subjunctive after the relative pronoun *dont*, preceded by a negative. ⁶ See Ex. XXXVIII. Note ¹¹, Part I. ⁷ *He ordered it to be written*=*il ordonna qu'on l'écrît*. See Ex. III. Note ¹, and Ex. VII. Rule ⁴, Part I. ⁸ *Not long after*=*peu de temps après*. ⁹ *Was bribed to kill*=*se laissa décider par des présents à tuer*. ¹⁰ See Ex. XVII. Note ⁵, Part I. ¹¹ *Laisser* and *faire* must be immediately followed by the infinitive (old permissive and causative moods). Ex.: *Let that man go out*=*laissez sortir cet homme*; *Make that child walk*=*faites marcher cet enfant*. ¹² *Inquired the reason*=*lui en demanda la raison*. ¹³ *To turn to*=*se tourner vers*.

XXX.—HEALTH.

Such is the power of health, that without its¹ co-operation, every other comfort is torpid, and lifeless, as the powers of vegetation without the sun. And yet this bliss is commonly thrown away in thoughtless negligence, or in foolish experiments of our own strength; we let it perish without remembering its² value, or waste it, to show how much we have to spare:³ it is sometimes⁴ given up to the management of levity and chance, and sometimes sold for the applause of jollity and debauchery.

Health is equally neglected, and with equal impropriety, by the votaries of business, and the followers of pleasure. Some⁵ ruin their health

by intemperate studies, others by incessant revels: though it requires no great abilities to prove, that he⁶ loses pleasure, who loses health. To the noisy rout of bacchanalian rioters it is almost in vain to offer advice.

Poverty is, indeed, an evil from which we naturally fly; but let us not run from one enemy to another, nor take shelter⁷ in the arms of sickness.—JOHNSON.

¹ In the note Ex. XXXII. Note ⁶, Part I., it is said translate *its* by *of it=en*, and place this pronoun *en* before the verb. In the above sentence there is no verb. One should be introduced. Turn, *without having its co-operation*. ² See ¹ above. *Without remembering its value=sans nous rappeler quelle EN est la valeur*. ³ *To show how much we have to spare=pour montrer la quantité dont nous pouvons disposer*. ⁴ See Ex. XXI. Note ⁶, Part II. ⁵ *Quelques-uns*. ⁶ Turn, *he who loses health, loses pleasure*. *He who=celui qui*. ⁷ *To take shelter=se réfugier*.

XXXI.—AUGUSTUS AND MÆCENAS.

Augustus Cæsar was seated one day on his tribunal, judging the causes of those unfortunate Romans who had been arraigned for the offences of the times; that is,¹ for having borne arms under Brutus and Cassius, in defence of² liberty: some of them he had already condemned,³ and there was little doubt what would become of⁴ the rest; when Mæcenas, whether⁵ by chance or design, stepped into⁶ the court. It was extremely crowded,⁷ and quite impossible to approach the tribunal. He therefore took his tablets, wrote a sentence in them,⁸ and desired⁹ them to be handed to the judge. Augustus opened them, and read this short sentence: 'Executioner! it is time to rise.' Augustus was struck, instantly deserted the tribunal, and the arraigned were acquitted, to a man.¹⁰ Such was the method, which this minister employed to

humanise his prince; and this adventure places the prince and the minister in¹¹ a very advantageous light.

¹ *C'est-à-dire.* ² *In defence of=pour la défense de.* ³ *Some of them he had already condemned.* Some, see Ex. XXX. Note ⁵, Part II., of them=*en*, before the verb; before the auxiliary, if the verb be written in a compound tense. ⁴ See Ex. XXIII. Note ¹, Part I. ⁵ *Whether . . . or=soit . . . ou.* ⁶ *To step into=entrer dans.* ⁷ *To crowd=encombrer par la foule.* ⁸ *In it, in them, there, therein=y*, pronoun to be placed before the verb. ⁹ *And desired them to be handed to the judge=et pria le public de les passer au juge.* ¹⁰ Turn, and the arraigned were all acquitted. ¹¹ *In a very advantageous light=sous un jour très avantageux.*

XXXII.—JUDGE ROBINSON AND MR. CURRAN.

Soon after Mr. Curran had been called to the bar, on some statement of *Judge* Robinson's, the young counsel observed, that: 'he had never met the law, as¹ laid down by his lordship, in any book in his library.' 'That may be, sir,' said the judge; 'but I suspect that your library is very small.' Mr. Curran replied: 'I find it² more instructive, my lord, to study good works than to³ compose bad ones.⁴ My books may be few,⁵ but the title-pages give me the writers' names, and my shelf is not disgraced by any such rank absurdities, that their very authors are ashamed to own⁶ them.' 'Sir,' said the judge, 'you are forgetting the respect which you owe to the dignity of the judicial character.' 'Dignity!' exclaimed Mr. Curran; 'my lord, when the person intrusted with the dignity of the judgment-seat lays it aside for a moment to enter into a disgraceful personal contest, it is in vain, when he has been worsted in the encounter, that he seeks to resume it; it is in vain that he tries to shelter himself behind an authority which he has abandoned.'⁷ 'If you say another word I

will⁴ commit you,' replied the angry judge; to which Mr. Curran retorted: 'If your lordship shall do⁹ so, we shall both of us have the consolation of reflecting, that I am not the worst thing your lordship has¹⁰ committed.'—BROUGHAM.

¹ *As laid down by his lordship*=*telle que sa seigneurie l'établissait.* ² *Turn, I find that it is more instructive.* ³ After *than* an infinitive must be preceded by *de*. ⁴ *One, ones* are not translated after an adjective. Adjectives of quality may in French be used as nouns. *Ex.* : *You are a lazy fellow*=*vous êtes un paresseux; the little ones were in the nest*=*les petits étaient dans le nid.* *Than to compose bad ones*=*que d'en composer de mauvais.* See Note ³ above. ⁵ *Few*=*peu nombreux.* ⁶ *To own*=*avouer, reconnaître.* ⁷ See *Ex. III. Note 3, Part I.* ⁸ See *Ex. XL. Note 9, Part I.* ⁹ Write the verb in the indicative present. ¹⁰ See *Rule, Ex. XXXVIII. Note 10, Part I.*

XXXIII.—AN IRISH RUSE.

Though a side box, close to where we sat,¹ was completely filled, we beheld the door burst open, and an Irish gentleman attempt to make entry *vi et armis*. 'Shut the door, box-keeper!' loudly cried some of the party.² 'There is room,³ by the powers!' cried the Irishman, and persisted in advancing. On this,⁴ a gentleman of the second row rose, and exclaimed, 'Turn out⁵ that black-guard!' 'Oh, and is that your mode, honey?' coolly retorted the Irishman; 'come, come out, my dear, and give me satisfaction, or I will⁶ pull your nose, you coward,⁷ and *skillally* you through the lobby.'

This public insult left the tenant in possession no alternative; so⁸ he rushed out to accept the challenge; when, to the pit's⁹ general amusement, the Irishman jumped into his place, and having deliberately seated and adjusted himself, he turned round¹⁰ and cried: 'I'll talk to you after the play is over.'—REYNOLDS'S *Memoirs*.

¹ *Close to where we sat*=*tout près de l'endroit où nous étions assis.* ² *Party*=*compagnie.* ³ *Room*=*place.* The English word

place is generally translated by *endroit* or *lieu*; the French word *place* means *room* or *square*. Ex.: *There is room for two*=*il y a place* or *de la place pour deux*; *Trafalgar Square*=*Place Trafalgar*.
⁴ *On this, on that, thereupon*=*là-dessus*. ⁵ *To turn out*=*mettre à la porte*; *chasser*. ⁶ See Ex. XL. Note ⁹, Part I. ⁷ *You coward*=*lâche que vous êtes*. ⁸ *So*=*aussi*. See Ex. XXVII. Note ¹², Part I. ⁹ *Pit*=*parterre* (masc.). ¹⁰ *To turn round*=*se retourner*. See Ex. XXXV. Note ², and Ex. XXVI. Note ¹⁴, Part I.

XXXIV.—ENGLISH SCENERY.

Nothing can be more imposing than the magnificence of English park scenery. Vast lawns that extend like sheets of vivid green, with here ¹ and there clumps of gigantic trees, heaping up rich piles of foliage. The solemn pomp of groves and woodland glades, with the deer trooping in silent herds across them; the hare bounding away to the covert, or the pheasant bursting upon the wing. The brook, taught to wind in natural meanderings, or expand into a glassy lake; the sequestered pool, reflecting the quivering trees, with the yellow leaf sleeping on its bosom, and the trout roaming fearlessly through its ² limpid waters; while some rustic temple or sylvan statue, grown green and dark with ³ age, gives an air of classic sanctity to the seclusion.

These are but a few ⁴ of the features of park scenery; but what most ⁵ delights me is the creative talent with which the English decorate the unostentatious abodes of middle life. The rudest habitation, the most unpromising and scanty portion of land, in the hands of an Englishman of taste, becomes a little paradise.

The great charm, however, of English scenery is the moral feeling that seems to pervade ⁶ it. It is associated in the mind with ideas of order, of quiet, of sober, well-established principles, of hoary usage and reverend custom. Everything

seems to be the growth of ages of regular and peaceful existence.—WASHINGTON IRVING.

¹ *Here and there*=*ça et là*. ² See Ex. XXX. Notes ¹ and ², Part II.
³ *With age*=*par l'âge; de vieillesse*. ⁴ *These are but a few*=*ce ne sont là que quelques-uns*. ⁵ *Most*=*le plus*. See Ex. I. Note ², Part I.
⁶ *That seems to pervade it*=*qui semble y avoir pénétré; qui semble y régner*.

XXXV.—A VISIT IN ENGLAND.

A Russian of my acquaintance visited England with a small portmanteau, about two years ago. Good heavens! How¹ he abused us! Never was so rude, so barbarous, so suspicious a people.² I saw him a few months ago, having just paid³ us a second visit: he was in raptures with all⁴ he saw; never was a people so improved; his table was crowded with⁵ cards; how⁶ hospitable we were! The master of the hotel had displaced an English family to accommodate him; what a refined consideration for a foreigner!

Whence rose this difference in the Russian's estimate of us? His uncle was dead, he had come into⁷ a great property. In neither case had our good people⁸ looked at the foreigner: they had looked, the first time, at the small portmanteau, and the second at the three carriages and four.⁸

But if the commercial spirit makes us attach undue importance to wealth, it keeps alive also a spirit of honesty as the best means to acquire it. Thus the same causes that produce our defects, conspire⁹ to produce many of our merits. The effect of commerce is to make men trustworthy in their ordinary dealings and in their social relations. It does not this by a sense of virtue alone, but that of self-interest.¹⁰ A trader soon discovers that honesty is the best policy. If you travel through Italy and¹¹ your carriage breaks down,¹²

there is perhaps but one smith in the place,¹³ he repairs your carriage at ten times the value of the labour, he takes advantage of¹⁴ your condition and his own monopoly of the trade.¹⁵—
BULWER.

¹ *How=comme.* *How* is also translated by *combien* and *que*. See Ex. XXXIX. Note ², Part I. ² See Ex. XXVI. Note ², Part I. ³ *To pay a visit=faire une visite.* ⁴ *All=tout ce qui* (nom.); *tout ce que* (accus.). ⁵ See Ex. XII. Note ⁹. ⁶ See Ex. XXXIX. Note ⁹, Part I. ⁷ *To come into* (money, property)=*hériter de.* ⁸ *Three carriages and four=trois voitures à quatre chevaux.* ⁹ *Conspire=se réunissent.* ¹⁰ *Self-interest=intérêt personnel.* ¹¹ See Ex. XVII. Note ⁵, Part I., and observe the exception to the rule given therein. ¹² *To break down=se briser.* ¹³ See Ex. XXXIII. Note ², Part II. ¹⁴ See Ex. XXXVIII. Note ¹⁵, Part I. ¹⁵ *And his own monopoly of the trade=et de ce qu'il est le seul de son métier.*

XXXVI.—THE POINT OF HONOUR.

An English peer, who has not been long dead,¹ used to tell a pleasant story of a French gentleman that visited him early one morning at Paris, and² after great professions of respect, let him know that he had it³ in his power to oblige him; which,⁴ in short, amounted⁵ to this, that he believed he⁶ could tell his lordship the person's name who jostled him as he came out of the opera, but before he⁷ would proceed, he begged his lordship that he would not deny⁸ him the honour of making him his second.⁹ The English lord, to avoid¹⁰ being drawn into a very foolish affair, told him, that he was under engagements for his two next duels to a couple of particular friends. Upon which the gentleman immediately withdrew, hoping his lordship would not take it ill if he meddled¹¹ no further¹² in an affair from whence¹³ he himself was to¹⁴ receive no advantage.—*Spectator.*

¹ *Qui est mort il n'y a que peu de temps.* ² Repeat the relative pronoun. ³ *He had it in his power to=il avait le pouvoir de.*

⁴ *Which=ce qui*; it refers to no particular noun, but to the preceding sentence. ⁵ *Amounted to this=revenait à ceci*. See Ex. XXVII. Note², Part II. ⁶ See Ex. XXVII. Note¹¹, Part I. ⁷ *Before he would proceed=avant de continuer*. The same rule as Note⁶ above. ⁸ *Refuser*. ⁹ *Second* (in duels)=*témoin*. ¹⁰ *To avoid=éviter de*, followed by the infinitive of the verb, which is written in English in the present participle. ¹¹ *To meddle in=se mêler de*. ¹² *No further=ne... davantage*. See Ex. II. Note⁸, and Ex. XXII. Note¹⁰, Part I. ¹³ *From whence=d'où*. ¹⁴ See Ex. XVII. Note⁸, Part I.

XXXVII.—OLIVER TWIST ASKS FOR SOME MORE.

Child¹ as he was, he was desperate with² hunger, and reckless with³ misery. He rose from the table; and advancing³ to⁴ the master, basin and spoon in⁵ hand, said: 'Please, sir, I want some more.'

The master was a fat, healthy man; but he turned very pale. He gazed in stupefied astonishment on the small rebel for⁶ some seconds, and then clung for support to the copper. The assistants were paralysed with² wonder; the boys⁷ with² fear.

'What!' said the master in⁸ a faint voice.

'Please, sir,' replied Oliver, 'I want some more.'

The master aimed a blow at Oliver's head with the ladle; pinioned him in his arms; and shrieked aloud for the beadle.

The Board were sitting in solemn conclave, when Mr. Bumble rushed into the room in great excitement, and addressing the gentleman in the high chair,⁹ said: 'Mr. Limbkins, I beg your pardon, sir! Oliver Twist has asked for more!'

There was a general start. Horror was depicted on every countenance.

'For more!' said Mr. Limbkins. 'Compose yourself,¹⁰ Bumble, and answer me distinctly. Do I understand that he asked for more, after he¹¹ had eaten the supper allotted by the dietary?'

'He did,¹² sir,' replied Bumble.

'That boy will be hung,' said the gentleman in¹³ the white waistcoat. 'I know that boy will be hung.'

Nobody controverted the prophetic gentleman's opinion. An animated discussion took¹⁴ place. Oliver was ordered into instant confinement; and a bill¹⁵ was next morning pasted on the outside of the gate, offering a reward of five pounds to anybody¹⁶ who would take Oliver Twist off the hands of the parish. In other words, five pounds and Oliver Twist to any man or woman who wanted an apprentice to any trade, business, or calling.—CHARLES DICKENS.

¹ Child as he was. See Ex. XXVII. Note⁸, Part II.—*Tout enfant qu'il était.* *Enfant*, noun used as an adjective; *tout*, adverb. Rule.—*Tout*, adverb, remains invariable. However, it becomes adjective, or at least agrees like one, in gender and number, when immediately followed by an adjective or a participle feminine, beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirate. Ex.: *elle est tout aimable*; but *elle est toute changée*. This is done to prevent a sound thoroughly masculine, *tout*, before one feminine. When the adjective begins with a vowel, the *t* of *tout* is carried on that vowel and the ear is then satisfied. ² See Ex. XII. Note⁸, Part I. ³ To advance=*s'avancer*. ⁴ To, towards=*vers*. ⁵ See Ex. V. Note⁵, Part I. ⁶ See Ex. VII. Note³, Part II. ⁷ Turn, *The boys were with fear.* See Ex. XXI. Note¹², Part I. ⁸ De. ⁹ In the high chair=*qui présidait*. ¹⁰ Compose yourself=*calmez-vous*. ¹¹ Turn, after having eaten, and See Ex. XXVII. Note¹¹, Part I. ¹² He did=*oui*. ¹³ In the white waistcoat=*au gilet blanc* (attribute) See Ex. XXVI. Note¹¹, Part II. ¹⁴ To take place=*avoir lieu*. ¹⁵ To paste a bill=*poser une affiche*. ¹⁶ To anybody who would=*à quiconque voudrait*; *à toute personne qui voudrait*.

XXXVIII.—LUCIAN ON DANCING.

Lucian, in one of his dialogues, introduces a philosopher chiding his friend for his being¹ a lover of dancing, and a frequenter of balls. The other undertakes the defence of his favourite diversion, which, he says, was at first invented by

the goddess Rhea, and preserved the life of Jupiter himself from the cruelty of his father Saturn. He proceeds to show, that it had been approved by the greatest men in² all ages; that Homer calls Merion a fine dancer; and says, that the graceful mien and great agility which he had acquired by that exercise, distinguished him above the rest of the armies, both³ of Greeks and Trojans.

He adds, that Pyrrhus gains more reputation by⁴ inventing the dance which is called after his name, than by all his other actions: that the Lacedæmonians, who were the bravest people in⁵ Greece, gave great encouragement to this diversion, and made⁶ their Hormus (a dance much resembling the *French* brawl) famous all over⁷ Asia: that there were still extant some Thessalian statues erected to the honour of their best dancers: and that he wondered how⁸ his brother philosopher⁹ could declare himself against the opinions of those two persons, whom he professed so much to admire, Homer and Hesiod; the latter of whom compares valour and dancing together; and says, 'That the gods have bestowed fortitude on some men, and on the others a disposition for dancing.'

Lastly, he puts¹⁰ him in mind that Socrates (who, in the judgment¹¹ of Apollo, was the wisest of men) was not only a professed admirer of this exercise in¹² others, but learned it himself when he was an old man.—BUDGELL, *The Spectator*.

¹ For his being=*pour être*. ² See Ex. I. Note⁶, Part I. ³ See Ex. XVIII. Note⁶, Part II. ⁴ See Ex. VII. Note³, Part I. ⁵ To make, meaning to render, is *rendre*. ⁶ All over Asia=*dans toute l'Asie*. ⁷ See Ex. VII. Note³, Part I. ⁸ Frère en philosophie. ⁹ He puts him in mind=*il lui rappelle*. ¹⁰ In the judgment=*aux yeux*. *A mes yeux* (liter.)=*before my eyes*; *à mes yeux* (figur.)=*in my judgment, in my opinion, in my eyes*. ¹¹ In others=*chez les autres*. See Ex. XIII. Note⁵, Part II.

XXXIX.—SCOTCH LUXURY.

The Laird of Keppoch, chieftain of a branch of the M'Donalds, in a winter campaign against a neighbouring laird, with whom he was at variance about a possession, gave orders¹ for rolling a snow-ball² to lay under his³ head in the night; whereupon⁴ his followers⁵ murmured, saying:⁶ 'Now we despair of victory, since⁷ our leader is become so effeminate that he can't sleep without a pillow.'

¹ To give orders=*donner l'ordre*. See Rule, Ex. VII. Note⁴, Part I. ² Snow-ball=*boule de neige*. ³ See Rule, Ex. LXXVIII. Note⁷, Part I. ⁴ Sur quoi. ⁵ Partisans. ⁶ See Ex. VI. Note¹¹, Part II. ⁷ Since (prep. of time)=*depuis que*; since, conjunction, is *puisque*; (of time) *depuis que*.

XL.—CATO MEETING THE CORPSE OF HIS SON.

Welcome,¹ my son! Here lay him down, my friends,
Full in my sight, that² I may view at leisure
The bloody³ corpse, and count those glorious wounds.
How⁴ beautiful is death, when earn'd by virtue!
Who would⁵ not be that youth? What pity is it,
That we can die but once to serve our country!
Why sits this sadness on your brows, my friends?
I should have blushed, if Cato's house had stood
Secure, and flourished in a civil war.
Portius, behold thy brother, and remember,
Thy life is⁶ not thy own, when Rome demands it.

ADDISON.

¹ Welcome=*sois le bienvenu*. ² That, in order that. ³ Bloody=*sanguinaire*, when meaning *bloodthirsty*; and *sanglant*, when meaning *covered with blood, where blood is shed*. ⁴ See Ex. XXXV. Note¹⁰, Part I. ⁵ Conditional of *vouloir*. ⁶ Is not thy own = *ne t'appartient pas*.

XLI.—TEUFELSDRÖCKH.

Of good society Teufelsdröckh appears to have seen little, or has mostly forgotten what he saw. He speaks out with a strange plainness; calls many things by their mere dictionary names. To¹ him the upholsterer is no pontiff, neither is any drawing-room a temple, were² it never so begilt and overhung: 'A whole immensity of Brussels carpets, and pier-glasses, and ormolu,' as he himself expresses it, 'cannot hide from me that such drawing-room is simply a section of infinite space, where so many³ God-created souls do for the time meet⁴ together.' To Teufelsdröckh the highest duchess is respectable, is venerable; but nowise for her pearl bracelets and Maline laces: in his eyes,⁵ the star⁶ of a lord is little less and little more than the broad button of Birmingham spelter in a clown's smock; 'each is an implement,' he says, 'in its kind; a tag for *hooking together*; and, for the rest, was dug from the earth, and hammered on a stithy before smiths' fingers.' Thus does the professor look in men's faces with a strange impartiality, a strange scientific freedom; like a man unversed in the higher circles, like a man dropped thither from the moon.—THOMAS CARLYLE, *Sartor Resartus*.

¹ Pour. ² Were it never so begilt and overhung=fût-il couvert d'or et de tableaux. ³ Un certain nombre. ⁴ To meet together=se réunir. ⁵ In his eyes=à ses yeux. See Ex. V. Note ⁵, Part I., and Ex. XXXVIII. Note ¹⁰, Part II. ⁶ Crachat, décoration.

XLII.—CHARLES THE BOLD.

The history of Charles is a history of the highest and most varied interest. The tale, as a mere tale, as a narrative of personal adventure and a display of personal character, is one of the most attractive in European history. As such it has

been chosen by Scott as the material for two of his novels, one of which,¹ if not absolutely one of his masterpieces, at any rate ranks high² among his writings. It is probably from *Quentin Durward* that most³ English readers have drawn their ideas of Louis the Eleventh and of Charles the Bold; some may even have drawn their main ideas of the fights of Grandson, Morat, and Nancy, from the hurried⁴ narrative in *Anne of Geierstein*. In fact a nobler subject, whether⁵ for romance, or poetry, or tragedy, can hardly be conceived than the exaltation and the fall of the renowned⁶ Burgundian duke.—E. A. FREEMAN, *Historical Essays*.

¹ One of which=dont l'un. ² To rank high=occuper un rang élevé. ³ Most=la plupart des. ⁴ Hurried narrative in=du récit fait à la hâte qui se trouve dans. ⁵ Whether...or=soit...soit. ⁶ The renowned Burgundian duke=le fameux duc de Bourgogne.

XLIII.—WILLIAM SAWTRÉ'S CASE.

About the same time, an unfortunate man, named William Sawtré, was actually burnt for heresy. He had been a priest, and held a living¹ in Norfolk; but was deprived for heretical opinions, and afterwards, on recanting,² readmitted into the church. He now petitioned parliament that³ he might be allowed to dispute before them on points of doctrine. The Primate summoned him, as suspected of relapse from the tenor of his petition: he proved contumacious⁴ when interrogated; sentence was pronounced against him as a relapsed heretic; and he was delivered over⁵ to the constable and marshal. The king, by the advice of the lords spiritual and temporal, ordered him⁶ to be publicly burnt, 'in abhorrence of his crime, and as an example to all other Christians.' It is distinctly settled in

this writ that the burning of heretics is enjoined by the law of God as well as⁷ of man, and by the canons.⁸—LORD BROUGHAM, *England and France under the House of Lancaster*.

¹ *To hold a living* (church)=*avoir une cure*. ² *On recanting*=*après s'être rétracté*. ³ *Il demanda alors au parlement qu'on lui donnât la permission de*. ⁴ *He proved contumacious*=*il se montra rebelle, obstiné*. *When interrogated*=*quand on l'interrogea*. ⁵ *He was delivered over to*=*on le remit entre les mains de*. ⁶ *Turn, he ordered that he should be publicly burnt*, and see Rule, Ex. VII. Note ⁴, Part I. ⁷ *Turn, as well as that of (the) men*. ⁸ *Canons* (in church)=*les canons de l'église*.

XLIV.—WORDS OF FRENCH ORIGIN.

I have often wished, that as in our constitution there are several persons whose business it is to watch over our laws, our liberties and commerce, certain men might be¹ set apart² as superintendents of our language, to hinder any words of a foreign coin from passing among us; and in particular to prohibit any French phrases from becoming current in this kingdom, when those of our stamp are altogether as valuable. The present war has so adulterated our tongue with strange words that it would be impossible for one of our great-grandfathers to know what his posterity have been doing, were he³ to read their exploits in a modern newspaper. Our warriors are very industrious in propagating the French language, at the same time that they are so gloriously successful in beating down⁴ their power. Our soldiers are men of strong heads for action, and perform such feats as they are not able to express. They want⁵ words in their own tongue to tell us what it is they achieve, and therefore send us over^{*} accounts of their performances in a jargon of phrases, which they learn among their conquered⁶ enemies. They ought.

however, to be provided with secretaries, and assisted by our foreign ministers, to tell their story for them in plain English, and to let us know in our mother-tongue what it is our brave countrymen are⁷ about.—ADDISON, *The Spectator*.

¹ See Rule, Ex. VII. Note ⁴, Part I. ² *To set apart* = *choisir*. ³ *Were he to* = *s'il devait, s'il avait à, s'il venait à, eût-il à*. ⁴ *To beat down* = *abattre, rabattre*. ⁵ *To want* = *manquer de*, when meaning *to be in want, in need of*. ⁶ *To conquer* = *conquérir*, when referring to land conquered; *vaincre*, when referring to soldiers or army conquered, vanquished. ⁷ *To be about* = *faire*. See Ex. XXVI. Note ⁷, Part I.

XLV.—NOT PARTICULAR.

An old exciseman of our town, who was not very rich, had a daughter who, as you shall see, was not very handsome. It was the opinion of everybody that this young woman would not soon¹ be married, as she wanted² two main articles, beauty and fortune. But, for³ all this, a very well-looking man, that happened to be travelling those parts, came and asked the exciseman for his daughter in marriage. The exciseman, willing to deal⁴ openly by him, asked if he had seen the girl; 'For,' said he, 'she is hump-backed.' 'Very well,' cried the stranger, 'that⁵ will do for me.' 'Ay,' said the exciseman, 'but my daughter is as brown as a berry.' 'So much the better,' cried the stranger, 'such skin wears⁶ well.' 'But she is bandy-legged.' 'No matter,' her petticoats will hide that defect.' 'But then she is very poor, and wants⁸ an eye.' 'Your description delights me,' cried the stranger: 'I have been looking out for one⁹ of her make; for I keep an exhibition of wild beasts, and I intend to show¹⁰ her off for a Chimpanzee.'—OLIVER GOLDSMITH.

¹ *Soon* = *de sitôt*. *De sitôt* can only be used in a negative sentence; *tôt, bientôt*, must be used when the sentence is affirmative. ² *As*

she wanted=car il lui manquait. ³ *For all this*=malgré tout cela.
⁴ *Willing to deal openly by him*=voulant agir honnêtement envers lui.
⁵ *That will do for me*=cela fera mon affaire. ⁶ *To wear well*=être d'un bon user. ⁷ *No matter*=n'importe. ⁸ See Note ² above. ⁹ *One of her make*=une comme elle. In French, *one of them*.
¹⁰ *To show off*=faire voir.

XLVI.—COLONEL SCHOUARDIN.

The army of Kléber was attacked at Torfou, in 1793, by Charette and Bonchamp: and, unable to resist the superior forces of the Vendéens, retreated¹ and lost its artillery. The republicans were on the point of being destroyed, as their retreat was about to be cut off. Kléber called to Lieutenant-Colonel Schouardin, and said: 'Take a company of grenadiers; stop the enemy at that ravine; you will be killed, but your comrades will be saved.' '*Oui, mon général,*' replied Schouardin calmly. He marched;² held³ the Vendéens a long time in check; and after prodigies of valour, died with his army on the spot. This '*Oui, mon général,*' equals the finest specimens of antiquity.

¹ *To retreat*=battre en retraite. ² *He marched* means *he went away, he set out*=il partit. ³ *To hold in check*=arrêter, empêcher d'avancer.

XLVII.—STAGE CRITICISM.

Doctor John Hill, author of some farces, and a paper called *The Spectator*, went into the green-room¹ of Covent Garden Theatre, and addressing himself to Mrs. Woffington, of celebrated memory, and the first of actresses, he questioned² her, whether she had seen *The Spectator* of that day. The lady answered in³ the negative. The doctor replied: 'Because, if you had,⁴ you would have seen my opinion of your performance, last night, in the character of *Calista*.' 'I am much obliged to you, sir,' replied Mrs. Woffington, 'for

your kind intentions towards me; but, unfortunately, the play of last night had to be changed into the *Journey to London*, in which I played the part of *Lady Townley*.'

¹ *Green-room=foyer.* ² *To question=demander.* ³ *She answered in the negative=elle répondit que non.* ⁴ *Turn, if you had seen it.*

XLVIII.—OLD ACQUAINTANCES.

Lord Kames used to relate the story of a man who claimed the honour of his acquaintance on rather singular grounds. His lordship, returning from the north circuit to Perth, happened one night to sleep at Dunkeld. The next morning, walking towards the ferry, but apprehending he¹ had lost² his way, he asked a man whom he met³ to conduct him. The other answered, with⁴ much cordiality: 'I will do that with⁵ all my heart, my lord. Does not your lordship remember me? My name is John —, I have had the honour to be before your lordship for⁶ stealing sheep!' 'Oh! John! I remember you very well; and how is your wife? She had also the honour to be before me, for⁷ receiving them, knowing⁸ them to be stolen.' 'At your lordship's service. We were very lucky; we got off⁹ for want of evidence; and I am still going on in the butcher trade.' 'Then,' replied his lordship, 'we may have the honour of meeting³ again.'

¹ See Ex. XXVII. Note ¹¹, Part I. ² *To lose one's way=s'égarer.* See Ex. IX. Note ¹¹, Part I. ³ *To meet (neuter)=se rencontrer. To meet (active)=rencontrer (to meet by chance); aller à la rencontre de, aller au-devant de (to meet purposely).* ⁴ *Avec.* Cordiality accompanies the answer. See Ex. XII. Note ⁹, Part I. ⁵ *With all my heart=de tout mon cœur.* The heart does not accompany the action expressed by the verb of the sentence; the action is performed with a feeling coming from the heart. See Ex. XII. Note ⁹, Part I. ⁶ *Turn, for having stolen.* ⁷ *Turn, for having received.* ⁸ *Turn, knowing that they had been stolen.* ⁹ *We got off for want of evidence=faute de preuves nous fûmes acquittés.*

XLIX.—DANTON AND DESMOULINS.

The day on¹ which Danton was guillotined, several others suffered² the same fate. The bag which received the heads of the victims was therefore large. When the fatal axe was falling on the necks of some,³ others, alighted from the cart, were awaiting their turn at the foot of the scaffold. Camille Desmoulins and Danton were among the latter, and were engaged in conversation, when the executioner came to take⁴ Camille Desmoulins to the scaffold. Danton and he approached for the purpose of embracing,⁵ but were prevented from doing so by the executioner. 'Go, wretch,' said Danton to him, 'our heads will seek each other⁶ in the sack.'

¹ On which = *que*. ² To suffer (to undergo) = *subir*. ³ Quelques-uns. ⁴ To take (to conduct) = *mener*. ⁵ To embrace (neuter) = *s'embrasser*, and see Ex. II. Note ⁵, Part I. ⁶ See Ex. XL. Note ⁵, and Ex. XXV. Note ¹, Part I.

L.—FRIENDS IN NEED.

When Prince Poniatowski, who was afterwards Stanislaus, the last king of Poland, was in this country, his chief¹ companion was Colonel Frederick. They were accustomed to walk together round the suburbs of the town, and to dine at a tavern or common eating-house. On one occasion the prince had some bills to discount in the city, and took Frederick with him to transact the business. The prince remained at Batson's coffee-house, Cornhill, while Frederick was employed² on the bills. Some impediment occurred, which prevented the affair from being settled that day, and they proceeded on their usual walk before dinner, round Islington. After their walk, they went to Dolly's in Paternoster Row.

Their dinner was³ beefsteaks, a pot of porter, and a bottle of port. The bill was presented to the prince, who, on looking⁴ over it, said it was reasonable, and handed it to Frederick, who concurred in the same opinion, and returned it to the prince, who desired him to pay. 'I have no money,' said Frederick. 'Nor⁵ have I,' said the prince; 'what are we to do?' Frederick paused a few moments; then desiring the prince to remain until⁶ he returned, left the place, and pledged⁷ his watch at the nearest pawnbroker's, and thus discharged the reckoning.⁸

¹ Chief (adj.)=*principal*. ² While Frederick . . . on the bills=*pendant que Frédéric s'occupait des billets*. ³ Se composait de. ⁴ To look over=*parcourir*. ⁵ Nor have I=*ni moi non plus*. ⁶ Until he returned=*jusqu'à son retour*. ⁷ To pledge=*engager*. ⁸ To discharge the reckoning=*régler le compte*.

LI.—SEYMOUR.

Seymour, the celebrated painter of horses, having been affronted by Charles, the old haughty Duke of Somerset, in consequence¹ of having intimated that he believed he had² the honour to belong to his grace's family, when he was afterwards requested to return to Petworth to complete a picture which no other painter of the day was able to finish, haughtily answered: 'My lord, I will³ now prove that I am of your grace's family—for I won't come.' Upon receiving this laconic reply, the duke sent his steward to demand repayment of a loan of one hundred pounds. Seymour briefly replied, that he would write to his grace. He did so,⁴ and directed his letter, 'Northumberland House, opposite the trunk-maker's, Charing Cross.' Enraged⁵ at this additional insult, the duke threw the letter into the fire unopened,⁶ ordering his steward at the same

time to have him arrested.⁷ But Seymour, struck with an opportunity of evasion, carelessly observed, that 'It was hasty in his grace to burn his letter, because it contained a bank-note for £100, and that therefore they were quits.'

¹ *In consequence of having intimated*=*pour avoir donné à entendre*. ² See Ex. XXVII. Note 11, Part I. ³ See Ex. XL. Note 9, Part I. ⁴ *He did so*=*il LE fit*, because the active verb *faire* must have a direct object. ⁵ *Enraged at*=*furieux de*. ⁶ *Unopened*=*sans l'ouvrir*. ⁷ *To have him arrested*=*de le faire arrêter*.

LII.—PUNISHMENT OF COWARDICE.

Captain Frauguet, governor of Fontarabia, having cowardly surrendered that place to the Spaniards, was condemned to be degraded from the rank of nobility. He was, accordingly, armed¹ from head to foot, and was then placed upon a raised scaffold, where twelve priests, dressed² in white surplices, chanted the vigils of the dead; the sentence, which declared the culprit a traitor, a villain, and convicted of falsehood and broken faith, having been previously read aloud. At the end of each psalm, they made a pause, during which a herald stripped³ the accused of some part of his armour, calling out⁴ at the same time, in⁵ a loud voice: 'This is⁶ the helmet of the coward, this is his corslet, his buckler,' etc. When the last psalm was finished, a basin of hot water was poured⁷ on his head, and he was then lowered from the scaffold, by means of a rope passed under his armpits. Being stretched out upon a hurdle, he was covered with a funeral pall, and was carried in this manner to the church, where the twelve priests surrounded his body, and sang over him the psalm, *Deus laudem meam ne tacueris*, which contains several denunciations against traitors and liars.

He was then allowed to go his way,⁸ with⁹ the brand of infamy thus imprinted on his forehead, for the remainder of his life.

¹ *Armed from head to foot=armé de pied en cap.* ² See Ex. XII. Note 6, Part I. ³ *To strip=dépouiller.* ⁴ *To call out=crier.* ⁵ *De.* ⁶ *This is and that is* (referring to things pointed to)=*voici, voilà.* ⁷ See Ex. III. Note 1, and Ex. LXXVIII. Note 7, Part I. ⁸ *He was then allowed to go on his way=on lui permit alors d'aller où il voulait.* ⁹ See Ex. XXIX. Note 3, Part I. Observe that before the name of the part of the body, the article is used instead of the possessive adjective.

LIII.—COLUMBUS.

He was tall and well-made, his head large,¹ with an aquiline nose, small light-blue or greyish eyes, a fresh complexion, and red hair, though incessant toil and exposure had bronzed the former, and bleached the latter, before the age of thirty. He had a majestic presence,² with much dignity, and at the same time affability of manner. He was³ fluent, even eloquent in discourse; generally temperate in deportment, but sometimes hurried by a too lively sensibility into a sally of passion. He was abstemious in his diet, indulged⁴ little in amusements of any kind, and, in truth, seemed too much absorbed by the great cause to which he had consecrated his life, to allow scope for the lower pursuits and pleasures which engage ordinary men.—PRESCOTT.

¹ *Large*, referring to size, is *gros*, and sometimes *fort*. Otherwise *large* is *grand*. The French adjective *large* means *wide*, *broad*. ² *Presence, carriage* (of a person)=*port* (masc.). ³ *To be fluent = s'exprimer avec facilité, avoir l'élocution facile.* ⁴ *To indulge in=se livrer à.*

LIV.—RATHER CURIOUS.

Cardinal Mazarin, amongst the many victims whom he consigned to the dungeons of the Bastile, had immured one¹ through a trifling

mistake in his name. He was at last turned out, with as little ceremony as² had been observed in clapping him in. The mistake was explained to him, on³ his dismissal; but he received a gentle hint to beware of a very dangerous spirit of curiosity which he had evinced during his confinement. Not being very anxious to trespass again on the hospitalities of the Bastile, he ventured to ask what involuntary proof he could have given of this very dangerous spirit of curiosity, in order that he might carefully avoid such an offence for⁴ the future; he was then gravely told that he had on one occasion made use of these words to an attendant: 'I always thought myself the most insignificant fellow⁵ upon the face of the earth, and should be most particularly obliged to you if you would⁶ inform me by what means I ever became of sufficient consequence to be shut up in this place.'

¹ One (of them). ² As had been observed=*qu'on en avait observé*. ³ On his dismissal=*quand on le renvoya*. On his return=*à son retour*, *quand il revint*; on his arrival=*à son arrivée*, *quand il arriva*. It would be the same in sentences like the following: on his landing, on her coronation, on his accession to the throne, and so forth. ⁴ For the future, in future=*à l'avenir*. ⁵ . . . fellow upon the face of the earth = . . . *individu qui fût sur la face de la terre*. ⁶ Stress is laid upon would, the verb *vouloir* must be used. After *if*, it must be written in the imperfect of the indicative.

LV.—GENERAL ST. ANTHONY.

When the Portuguese threw off the Spanish yoke, the entire success of the enterprise was attributed to the plenary protection of St. Anthony; and the new king, John IV., was compelled to declare his saintship Generalissimo of his armies. The monarch, it is said, blushed to countenance the superstition, but was obliged to meet¹ the wishes of an enthusiastic people, who had² just presented him with a crown.

The bust of the saint was accordingly carried in solemn procession, and being placed at the head of the army, was, with a most unexampled celerity of promotion, endued³ successively with the uniforms and insignia of the various grades. He was first made Corporal St. Anthony, Sergeant St. Anthony, Captain St. Anthony, and then Generalissimo St. Anthony. His bust was always carried at the head of the troops. All orders were issued in⁴ his name; but, alas! in the first encounter with the enemy, in the neighbourhood of Sabugal, a fatal shot carried away⁵ St. Anthony's head! Universal terror immediately pervaded the ranks, and the simple Portuguese paid for their superstition at the price of a complete defeat.

¹ To meet the wishes of=*se rendre au désir*. ² To have just=*venir de*. ³ Endued with=*revêtu de*. ⁴ In his name=*en son nom*. *In*, in a sentence used with the word *nom*, is translated by *en*, when followed by a possessive adjective, and by *à*, when followed by the article. Ex.: *In my father's name*=*au nom de mon père*. ⁵ To carry away=*emporter*, referring to inanimate things, and *emmener*, referring to persons or animals. The compounds of *mener* and *porter* refer all, the former to persons or animals, the latter to inanimate things: *amener*, *apporter*. *Mener* and *porter* are themselves used in the same way. Ex.: *take this gentleman to the station*=*menez ce monsieur à la station*; *take this letter to the post-office*=*portez cette lettre à la poste*.

LVI.—THE LITTLE MAN.

Bonaparte retained for¹ a long time the friendships which he had contracted at an early period, and having become First Consul, he continued to receive, at St. Cloud, those friends whom he had known in his humbler fortune. What contributed to make him change his conduct in this respect was, that many² of them forgot what was due to the chief of the Government, and this forced him to remember it himself. Dugazon was amongst this number: one day

that he was at St. Cloud, Bonaparte remarked that the embonpoint of that actor had increased considerably. 'How³ round you are getting,⁴ Dugazon!' said he. 'Not so much as you, my little man,' replied the buffoon. *My little man* said nothing, but Dugazon was never again admitted to⁵ his presence.

¹ *For* (referring to time)=*pendant*, when it means *during*; and *depuis*, when it means *since*. ² *Many of them* is *beaucoup d'entre eux*, when subject of the verb, and simply *beaucoup*, with *en* before the verb, when object. Ex.: *many of them forgot . . .* = *beaucoup d'entre eux oublièrent . . .*; *he forgot many of them* = *il en oubliera beaucoup*. ³ See Ex. XXXV. Note ¹⁰, Part I. ⁴ *To get* (to become) = *devenir*. ⁵ *En*.

LVII.—THE DUC DE LAVAL.

The Duc de Laval, when he arrived in England, on¹ his emigration from France, called on² several of the nobility,³ by whom he had been well received before the revolution. Almost all returned his visit; but amongst those who failed⁴ to do so was the Duke of D—, who did not even take the trouble of writing to a man he supposed poor. Some time afterwards they met at Cholmondeley's. The master of the house asked M. de Laval to join a party at whist, with the Duke of D—. 'Probably,' observed his grace, 'M. de Laval will not be inclined to do so, when⁵ he is told we play⁶ very high.' 'I beg your pardon,' replied the Duc de Laval, 'I play from one guinea to one hundred a point; and it is on⁷ that account that I am surprised you have⁸ not returned⁹ my visit.'

¹ *Après avoir émigré*. ² *To call on*=*faire une visite à, se présenter chez*. ³ *Several* cannot be translated before a collective. Turn, *several members of the nobility*. ⁴ *Who failed to do so*=*qui y manquèrent, qui ne le firent pas*. ⁵ See Ex. XXVI. Note ¹⁴, Part I. ⁶ *To play very high*=*jouer très gros jeu*. ⁷ Turn, *on account of that*. ⁸ See Rule, Ex. VII. Note ⁴, Part I. ⁹ *Rendu*.

LVIII.—AN ALIBI.

The usual defence of a thief, especially at the Old Bailey, is an *alibi*; to prove this by perjury is a common act of Newgate friendships: and there seldom is any difficulty¹ in procuring such witnesses. I remember a felon to have been proved to have been in Ireland at the time the robbery was sworn to have been done in London, and acquitted; but he had scarce gone from the bar when the witness was himself arrested for a robbery committed in London, at that² very time when he swore both he and his friend were at Dublin; for which robbery, I think, he was tried and executed.—H. FIELDING.

¹ *And there seldom is any difficulty in procuring such witnesses* = *il est rare qu'il soit difficile de se procurer de pareils témoins.* *Soit* is in the subjunctive mood after the verb *être* used impersonally. *Se procurer* = *to procure for oneself.* *De*, and not *des*, before the adjective, which precedes the noun taken in a partitive sense. ² *At that very time when he swore* = *au moment même où il jurait.*

LIX.—THE FORCE OF FASHION.

The most improper things we commit in the conduct of our lives, we¹ are led into by the force of fashion. Instances might be given, in which a prevailing custom makes us act against the rules of nature, law, and common sense; but at present I shall confine my consideration of² the effect it has upon men's minds, by looking into our behaviour when it is the fashion to go³ into mourning.

The custom of representing the grief we have for the loss of the dead by our habits, certainly had its rise⁴ from the real sorrow of such⁵ as were too much distressed to take the proper care they ought of their dress. By degrees it prevailed that such⁶ as had this inward oppression upon

their minds, made an apology for⁶ not joining with the rest of the world in their ordinary diversions, by a dress suited to their condition. This, therefore, was at first assumed by such⁴ only as were under real distress: to whom it was a relief that they had nothing about them so⁷ light and gay as to be irksome to the gloom and melancholy of their inward reflections, or that might misrepresent them to others. In process of time this laudable distinction of the sorrowful was lost, and mourning is now worn by heirs and widows. You see nothing but magnificence and solemnity in the equipage of the relict, and an air of release from servitude in the pomp of a son who has lost a wealthy father.

This fashion of sorrow is now become a generous part of the ceremonial between princes and sovereigns, who in the language of all nations are styled brothers to each other, and put on the purple upon⁸ the death of any potentate with whom they live in amity.—STEELE, *The Spectator*.

¹ Begin the whole sentence thus:—*c'est la force de la mode qui.*

² *Sur.* ³ *To go into mourning=prendre le deuil; se mettre en deuil.*

⁴ *Had its rise=provenait.* ⁵ *Such as=ceux qui.* ⁶ *To make an apology for, to apologise for=s'excuser de.* ⁷ *So . . . as, enough. . . . to=assez . . . pour.—As . . . so=comme . . . de même.* ⁸ *Upon the death=à la mort.*

LX.—PUBLIC OPINION.

It is an undertaking of some degree of delicacy to examine into¹ the cause of public disorders. If a man happens not to succeed in such an inquiry he will be thought weak and visionary; if he touches the true grievance, there is a danger that he may come near to persons of weight and consequence, who will rather be exasperated at the discovery of their errors than thankful² for the occasion³ of correcting them. If he should⁴ be

obliged to blame the favourites of the people, he will be considered as the tool of power; if he censures those in power, he will be looked on as an instrument of faction. But in all exertions of duty something is⁵ to be hazarded. When the affairs of the nation are distracted, private people are, by the spirit of that law, justified in stepping a little out⁶ of their ordinary sphere. They may look into them narrowly⁷; they may reason upon them liberally; and if they should⁴ be so⁸ fortunate as to discover the true source of the mischief, and to suggest any probable method of removing it, though they may displease the rulers for the day, they are certainly of service to the cause of government.—BURKE.

¹ To examine into=examiner. ² Thankful for=reconnaissant de. ³ L'occasion qu'on leur aura donnée. ⁴ Except in the present always use the imperfect of the indicative after *if*. See Ex. XXVII. Note 7, Part II. ⁵ Something is to be hazarded=on doit risquer quelque chose. ⁶ To step out=sortir. ⁷ Narrowly=attentivement, à fond, minutieusement. ⁸ See Ex. LIX. Note 7, Part II.

LXI.—THE SIEGE OF CADIZ.

In August 1702, an armament, under the command of the Duke of Ormond, appeared off¹ Cadiz. The Spanish authorities had no funds and no regular troops. The national spirit, however, supplied,² in some degree, what was wanting. The nobles and farmers advanced money. The peasantry³ were formed into what the Spanish writers call bands of heroic patriots, and what General Stanhope calls 'a rascally foot-militia.' If the invaders had acted with vigour and judgment, Cadiz would probably have fallen. But the chiefs of the expedition were divided by national⁴ and professional feelings, Dutch against English, land against sea. Sparre, the Dutch general, was sulky and perverse; Bellasys, the

English general, embezzled the stores. Lord Mahon imputes the ill temper of Sparre to the influence of the republican institutions of Holland. By parity⁵ of reason, we suppose that he would impute the peculations of Bellasys to the influence of the monarchical and aristocratical institutions of England. The Duke of Ormond, who had the command of the whole expedition, proved⁶ on⁷ this occasion, as on every other, destitute of the qualities which great emergencies require. No discipline was kept; the soldiers⁸ were suffered to rob and insult those whom it was most desirable to conciliate. Churches were robbed; images were pulled down. The officers shared the spoil instead of punishing the spoilers; and at last the armament, loaded, to use⁹ the words of Stanhope, 'with a great deal of plunder and infamy,' quitted the scene of Essex's glory, leaving the only Spaniard of note who had¹⁰ declared¹¹ for them¹² to be hanged by his countrymen.—MACAULAY, *Historical Essays*.

¹ *Off*=à la hauteur de. ² *To supply*=fournir. ³ To put the verb in the plural, the subject must be a noun in the plural, and not a collective in the singular. *The peasantry*=les paysans. ⁴ Turn, by feelings of nationality and profession. ⁵ *By parity of reason*=en raisonnant de la même manière. ⁶ *To prove* (neuter)=se montrer. ⁷ Dans. ⁸ Turn, one suffered that the soldiers, etc., and see Rule, Ex. VII. Note 4, Part I. ⁹ *Pour employer*. ¹⁰ See Rule, Ex. XXXVIII. Note 10, Part I. ¹¹ *To declare* (neuter)=se déclarer. See Ex. IX. Note 11, Part I. ¹² *For them*=pour eux, en leur faveur.

LXII.—STRANGE EVIDENCE.

I remember, in one case where I was counsel,¹ for a long time the evidence did not appear to touch the prisoner² at all, and he looked about³ him with the most perfect unconcern, seeming to think himself quite safe. At last the surgeon was called, who stated that the deceased had been killed by a shot, a gunshot⁴ in the head;

and he produced the matted hair and stuff taken⁵ out of the wound. It was all hardened with blood. A basin of warm water was brought into court, and as⁶ the blood was gradually softened, a piece of printed paper appeared, the wadding of the gun, which proved⁷ to be the half⁸ of a ballad. The other half had been found in the man's pocket when he was taken. He was hanged.
—LORD ELDON.

¹ *I was counsel*=*je plaçais*. ² *Prisoner*=*accusé*. ³ *About*=*autour de*. *About him*=*autour de lui* or *autour de soi*. *Soi* must always be used to avoid ambiguity. *Lui* might refer to another person spoken of in the sentence. For instance, in the sentence, *Henri dit à son père que désormais il travaillerait pour lui*, there is ambiguity; it means either, *Henry said to his father that he would henceforth work for him* (the father) or *for himself*. But if the sentence is *Henri . . . qu'il travaillera pour soi* (for himself), the ambiguity has disappeared. In the sentence to be translated above, *him* may be either *lui* or *soi*, because there is only one person spoken of in the sentence: there cannot be any ambiguity. ⁴ *Gunshot*=*coup de fusil*. Study the expressions: *coup de canon*, *coup de pistolet*, *coup d'épée*, *coup de sabre*, *coup de poing*, *coup de pied*, *coup de tête* (lit. and fig.), *coup de main* (lit. and fig.), *coup d'œil*, *coup de plume*, *coup de dent* . . . ⁵ *Que l'on avait extraits de la blessure*. ⁶ *As*=*à mesure que*, when an action is gradually going on. See Ex. XXII. Note 7, Part II. ⁷ *Which proved to be*=*qui se trouva être*. ⁸ *Half* (noun)=*moitié* (fem.); *half* (adj.)=*demi*.

LXIII.—DEEP¹ IN DEBT.

Palmer, the original² Joseph Surface, was at one time so oppressed with debt that he never left Drury Lane Theatre, and lived altogether in his dressing-room.³ Being later engaged at the Haymarket, he was conveyed there in a cartful⁴ of scenery, concealed in a piece⁵ of stage furniture.—ROUTLEDGE'S *Book of Theatrical Anecdotes*.

¹ *Criblé de dettes*. ² *Premier*. ³ *Dressing-room* is generally *cabinet de toilette*; but, speaking of the boxes where actors dress, it is *loge*. ⁴ *Cartful of scenery*=*dans une charrette pleine de décors*. ⁵ *A piece of furniture*=*un meuble*. *A piece of news*=*une nouvelle*. *A piece of advice*=*un conseil*.

PART III

I.—THE PHILOSOPHER.

As Rasselas was one day walking in the street, he saw a spacious building which¹ all were, by the open doors, invited to enter: he followed the stream of people, and found it a hall, or school of declamation, in which professors read lectures to their auditory.

He fixed his eye upon a sage raised above the rest, who² discoursed with great energy on the government of the passions. His look was venerable, his action graceful, his pronunciation clear, and his diction elegant. He showed, with great strength of sentiment and variety of illustration, that human nature is degraded and debased, when the lower faculties predominate over the higher, that when fancy, the parent of passion, usurps the dominion of the mind, nothing ensues but the natural effect of unlawful government, perturbation, and confusion; that she betrays the fortresses of the intellect to rebels, and excites her children to sedition against reason, their lawful sovereign. He compared reason to the sun, of which the light is constant, uniform, and lasting; and fancy to a meteor of bright but transitory lustre, irregular in its motion, and delusive in its direction.

He then communicated the various precepts given from time to time for the conquest of passions, and displayed the happiness of those

who had obtained the important victory, after which, man is no longer³ the slave of fear, nor the food⁴ of hope; is no more emaciated by envy, inflamed by anger, emasculated by tenderness, nor depressed by grief: but walks on calmly through the tumults or privacies of life, as the sun pursues alike his course through the calm of the stormy sky.

He enumerated many examples of heroes immovable by pain or pleasure, who looked⁵ with indifference on those modes or accidents, to which the vulgar give the names of good and evil. He exhorted his hearers to lay aside⁶ their prejudices, and arm themselves against the shafts of malice or misfortune, by invulnerable patience; concluding that this state only was happiness, and that this happiness was in every one's power.—JOHNSON.

¹ Turn, *into which*, because *to enter* is in French *entrer dans*, and prepositions must be immediately followed by their object. ² See Rule, Ex. VII. Note ², Part I. ³ *No longer*=*ne . . . plus*. See Ex. LXXII. Note ¹⁰, Part I. ⁴ *Jouet*. ⁵ *To look on*=*considérer*. ⁶ *To lay aside*. See Ex. II. Note ¹⁵, Part II.

II.—CHARLES DICKENS'S READINGS.

Dickens's habits as a speaker differed from those of most¹ orators. He gave no thought to the composition of the speech he was to make till the day before² he was to deliver it. No matter whether the effort was to be a long or short one, he never wrote down a word of what he was going to say; but when the proper time arrived for him to consider his subject, he took a walk into the country and the thing was done. When he returned he was all ready for his task. He liked to talk about the audiences that came to hear him read, and he gave the palm to his

Parisian one, saying it was the quickest to catch his meaning. Although he said many were always present in the room³ in Paris who did not fully understand English, yet the French eye is so quick to detect expression that it never failed instantly to understand what he meant by a look or an act. 'Thus, for instance,'⁴ he said, 'when I was impersonating Steerforth in *David Copperfield*, and⁵ gave that peculiar grip of the hand to Emily's lover, the French audience burst into cheers and rounds of applause.' He said, with reference to the preparation of his readings, that it was three months' hard labour⁶ to get up one of his own stories for public recitation, and he thought he had greatly improved his representation of the *Christmas Carol* while⁷ in this country. He considered the storm scene in *David Copperfield* one of the most effective of his readings. The character of *Jack Hopkins* in *Bob Sawyer's Party* he took great delight in representing.—*Memoirs of Charles Dickens*, by J. T. FIELD, of Boston.

¹ Most orators=*la plupart des orateurs*. ² The day before he was to=*la veille du jour où il devait*. ³ Room=*salle*. ⁴ For instance=*par exemple*. ⁵ See Ex. XVII. Note ⁵, Part I. ⁶ Three months' hard labour=*trois mois de travaux forcés*. ⁷ Turn, while he was.

III.—CIVITA VECCHIA.

Civita Vecchia is the finest nest of dirt and ignorance we have¹ found yet, except that African perdition they call Tangier, which is just like it. The people here live in alleys two yards wide, which have a smell about them which is peculiar but not entertaining. It is well the alleys are² not wider, because they hold as much smell now as a person can stand, and of course, if they were wider they would hold more,³ and then the people

would die. These alleys are paved with stone, and carpeted with deceased cats, and decayed rags, and decomposed vegetable-tops, and remnants of old boots, all soaked with dish-water,⁴ and the people sit around on stools and enjoy it. They are indolent, as a general thing,⁵ and yet have few pastimes. They work two or three hours at a time,⁶ but not hard, and then knock off and catch flies. This does not require any talent, because they only have to grab; if they do not get the one they are after,⁷ they get another.⁸ It is all the same to them.⁹ They have no partialities. Whichever they get is the one they want.

They have other kinds of insects, but it does not make¹⁰ them arrogant. They are very quiet, unpretending people. They have more of these things than other communities, but they do not boast of it.

These people are very uncleanly in face, in person, and dress. When they see anybody with clean linen on, it arouses their scorn. The women wash clothes at the public tanks in the streets; when their work is done, they sit in the alleys and nurse their babies. They nurse one at a time,⁶ and the others scratch their backs¹¹ against the door-post and are happy.

All this country belongs to the Papal States. Their education is at a very low stage.

They keep up the passport system here, but so they do¹² in Turkey. This¹³ shows that the Papal States are as far advanced as Turkey. This fact will be alone sufficient to silence¹⁴ the tongues of malignant calumniators.—MARK TWAIN, *The Innocents Abroad*.

¹ See Rule, Ex. XXXVIII. Note ¹⁰, Part I. ² The subjunctive mood is used after an impersonal verb. ³ *They would hold more=elles en contiendraient davantage.* ⁴ *Dish-water=eau de vaisselle.*

⁵ *As a general thing=en général.* ⁶ *At a time=à la fois.* ⁷ *Turn, after which they are.* The preposition must always be followed immediately by its object. ⁸ *Another (of them).* ⁹ *It is all the same to them=cela leur est égal, indifférent.* ¹⁰ *When to make means to render,* always translate it by *rendre*. ¹¹ See Rule, Ex. LXXVIII. Note 7, Part I. ¹² *C'est aussi ce que l'on fait en Turquie.* Note.—After *et, si, où, que*, the indefinite pronoun *on* is preceded by *l'.* *On*, which used to be *om*, and *hom*, comes from *homo*; it was a *noun*, and there is no wonder at an *article* having been chosen to precede it after certain words, for the sake of euphony. ¹³ See Ex. XXVII. Note 2, Part II. ¹⁴ *To silence=imposer silence à, faire taire.*

IV—CAMILLUS AND THE SCHOOLMASTER.

Camillus, in the expedition against the Falisci, after having routed¹ their army, besieged their capital city Falerii, which threatened² a long and vigorous resistance.

The reduction of this little place became famous by a celebrated action of the Roman general, that has done him more credit with posterity, than all his other triumphs united.

A schoolmaster, who had the care of the children belonging to the principal men in³ the city, having found means to decoy them into the Roman camp, offered to put them into the hands of Camillus, as the surest means of inducing the citizens to a speedy surrender. The general, struck with⁴ the treachery of a wretch, whose duty was to protect innocence, and not to betray it, for some time regarded the traitor with a stern silence: but at last finding words: 'Execrable villain,' cried the noble Roman, 'offer thy abominable proposals to creatures like thyself, and not to me: what! though we be enemies of your city, are there not natural ties, that bind all mankind, which should never be broken? There are duties required from us, in war, as well as in peace: we fight not against the age of innocence, but against men, men who have used⁵ us ill indeed, but

yet, whose crimes are virtues, when compared to thine. Against such base arts, my duty is to use only the Roman ones, valour and arms.' So saying,⁶ he ordered⁷ him to be stripped, his hands to be tied behind him, and in that ignominious manner to be whipped into the town by his own scholars. This generous behaviour in Camillus effected more⁸ than his arms could do;⁹ the magistrates of the town submitted to the senate, leaving to Camillus the conditions of their surrender: who only fined¹⁰ them in a sum of money to satisfy his army, and received them under the protection and into the alliance of Rome.—GOLD-SMITH.

¹ To rout = *mettre en déroute*. ² To threaten a resistance = *menacer de faire une résistance*. ³ See Ex. I. Note ⁶, Part I. ⁴ De, not *par*, because the action expressed by the verb is one of the mind; no bodily faculties participate in it. See Ex. XXIV. Note ¹⁶, Part I. ⁵ To ill use = *maltraiter*. ⁶ The verb *dire* is active in French and must have a direct object. Say: *En disant cela, en parlant ainsi*. See Ex. VI. Note ¹¹, Part II. *So saying* can also be translated by *sur ce* or *là-dessus* (thereupon). ⁷ See Rule, Ex. VII. Note ⁴, Part I. ⁸ Effected more = *produisit plus d'effet*. ⁹ Than his arms could do = *que n'en firent ses armes*. See Rule, Ex. IV. Note ¹³, Part II. ¹⁰ To fine some one in a sum of money = *condamner quelqu'un à payer une somme d'argent*.

V.—PARIS AND ITS FATE.

Paris is to France, not merely its greatest city, the seat of its government, the centre of its society and literature. It is France itself; it is, as it has been¹ so long, its living heart and its surest bulwark. It is the city which has created the kingdom, and on the life of the city the life of the kingdom seems² to hang. What is to be its fate? Is some wholly different position in the face of France and of Europe to be the future doom of that memorable city? Men will look on its possible humiliation with very different eyes. Some may be disposed to take up the strain of the

Hebrew prophet, and to say, 'How hath the oppressor ceased, the golden city ceased!' Others will lament the home³ of elegance and pleasure, and what calls itself civilisation.—E. A. FREEMAN, *Historical Essays*.

¹ *As it has been so long=comme cela existe depuis si longtemps.* The verb in this sentence is in the present of the indicative to express that the action is still going on. ² *Seems to hang=semble dépendre.* The French say *dépendre de*, not *dépendre sur*. ³ *Demeure, résidence, patrie.*

VI.—NIGHT.

Night! the pulse of the great city lies still. The echo of hurrying feet has long since died away. Softly falls the moonlight on those quiet dwellings; yet, under those roofs are hearts that are throbbing¹ and breaking with misery too hopeless for tears; forms bent before their time with crushing sorrow; lips that never smile, save when some mocking dream comes to render the morrow's waking² tenfold more bitter. There, on a mother's faithful breast, calm and beautiful, lies the holy brow of infancy. Oh! could³ it but pass away thus, ere the bow of promise had ceased to span its future—ere that serenest sky be darkened with lowering clouds! ere that loving heart shall feel the death-pang of despair!

There, too, sits Remorse, clothed in purple and fine linen, 'the worm that never dieth' hid in its shining folds. There, the weary watcher by the couch of pain, the dull ticking of the clock striking to the heart a nameless terror. With straining eye its hours are counted, with nervous hand the draught that brings no healing is held to the pallid lip.

The measured tread of the watchman as he passes⁴ his round, the distant rumble of the coach, perchance the disjointed fragment of a song from

bacchanalian lips, alone breaks⁵ the solemn stillness. At such an hour, serious thoughts, like unbidden guests, rush in. Life appears like the dream it is; Eternity, its waking; and involuntarily, the most careless eye looks up appealingly to Him by whom the hairs of our heads are all numbered.—FANNY FERN.

¹ *Are hearts that are throbbing and breaking with misery too hopeless for tears=il y a des cœurs qui palpitent et qui sont brisés par des malheurs si grands qu'ils ne sont plus capables de faire couler les larmes.* ² *Waking* (noun)=*réveil*. ³ *Could it but pass away thus=plût à Dieu qu'elle pût ainsi s'écouler, se passer.* ⁴ *To pass one's round=faire sa ronde.* ⁵ *Rompre.*

VII.—FERDINAND AND ISABELLA.

Ferdinand's connection with Isabella, while it reflected infinite glory on his reign, suggests a contrast most¹ unfavourable to his character. Hers was all magnanimity, disinterestedness, and deep devotion² to the interests of her people. His was the spirit of egotism. The circle of his views might be more or less expanded, but self was the steady, unchangeable centre. Her heart beat with the generous sympathies of friendship. Ferdinand proved³ himself unworthy of the admirable woman with whom his destinies were united. Ferdinand, in fine, a shrewd and politic prince, 'surpassing,' as a French writer,⁴ not his friend, has remarked, 'all the statesmen of his time in the science of the cabinet,' may be taken as the representative of the peculiar genius of the age.⁵ While Isabella, discarding all the petty artifices of state policy, and pursuing the noblest ends by the noblest means, stands far above her age.⁵—PRESCOTT.

¹ *Most unfavourable=des plus défavorables.* ² *Devotion=dévouement, and devotion, religiously speaking.* ³ *To prove* (neuter), *to prove oneself=se montrer.* ⁴ *Turn, a French writer who was not his friend.* ⁵ *Siècle.*

VIII.—SPEECH OF THE FRENCH AMBASSADOR TO QUEEN ELIZABETH IN DEFENCE OF MARY STUART.

‘I tell you, Madam, that instead of arresting the invasion with which this realm is menaced, you will only¹ precipitate it. Hitherto the Queen of Scots has been the target which has caught the arrows that have been aimed at your person. She is a stone that you hold in your hand. Fling it at your enemy and it is gone; you can threaten with it no more. Kill her as some advise you, and her death will arm your adversaries with despair, and will give them a more plausible ground² on which to assail you. Your majesty is a wise and prudent princess; we in France have observed you closely for³ these nineteen years; you have used the pretensions of the Queen of Scots to succeed you on the throne of these realms, as your strongest protection, and it is a maxim among us that those who change the base of their policy are on the way towards a fall. The Spanish minister in Paris says openly that it will be to his master’s advantage if the Queen of Scots is destroyed, being assured that the English Catholics will then give him their undivided allegiance. Your majesty has reigned long and happily, because so far⁴ you have preferred moderation to violence. Honour⁵ points clearly towards clemency. Interest is at least equally balanced. Think of the judgment of posterity, and of the name which you will leave behind you. Spare this lady, and you will lay my master under an eternal obligation, and you will earn immortal renown for yourself.’—FROUDE.

¹ *You will only*=*vous ne ferez que.* ² *A more plausible ground on which*=*une raison, un motif plus plausible pour.* ³ *For these*

nineteen years=*depuis dix-neuf ans*. The verb of the sentence must be written in the present of the indicative, because the action of *observing* was still going on at the time he spoke. ⁴ *So far*=*jusqu'ici*. ⁵ *Honour points clearly towards clemency*=*l'honneur vous indique clairement d'user de clémence*.

IX.—HENRY THE EIGHTH DISENGAGED.

After Jane Seymour's death, both Charles and Francis affected an anxiety to secure¹ the vacant hand of Henry. The imperial candidate was the Duchess of Milan. Among the many² ladies at the French court whose names were mentioned to him, Henry's fancy inclined to the only one whom he could not obtain, the Duchesse de Longueville. The Duchesse de Longueville, or Mary of Guise, had engaged herself to James of Scotland. M. de Chastillon, the ambassador in England, was occupied in endeavouring to persuade the king to content himself with one of her sisters, or with a daughter of the House of Lorraine or of Vendosme. The king, who had seen the Duchesse de Longueville, would have accepted her on³ the spot. Chastillon's correspondence relates his efforts, at once⁴ fruitless and grotesque, to induce Henry to select either of the others. The king said he would not choose a wife in the dark, or act in such a business on another man's judgment. The young ladies must be sent to Calais, and he would go over and see them.

The French⁵ court were anxious to keep him from the Duchess of Milan; and yet they could not consent to trot out⁶ their princesses, as Montmorency said, like horses at a fair. If the king chose none,⁷ they would be all made⁸ ridiculous; and whether⁹ he made a choice or not, to send them to Calais on such an errand

was disrespectful and discourteous.—FROUDE, *Note on the 'Pilgrim,' by William Thomas, Clerk to the Council to Edward VI.*

¹ *To secure*=*s'assurer de*. ² *Nombreux*. ³ *On the spot*=*sur-le-champ*. ⁴ *At once*, meaning *at a time, at the same time*=*à la fois*; when it means *immediately*, it is *à l'instant*. ⁵ *Turn, one was anxious at the French court*. ⁶ *To trot out*=*faire trotter*. *Faire* is often used to make a neuter verb active. Ex.: *To boil potatoes*=*faire bouillir des pommes de terre*. ⁷ *Turn, if he did not choose any (aucun) of them*. ⁸ *To make* is *rendre* when meaning *to render*. ⁹ Write *que* for *si*, and see the exception to the rule Ex. XVII. Note ⁵, Part I.

X.—THE PHILOSOPHER. (*Ex. I. Part III.*)

Rasselas, who could not conceive how any man could reason so forcibly without feeling the cogency of his own arguments, paid¹ his visit in a few days, and was denied admission. He had now² learned the power of money, and made his way by a piece of gold to the inner apartment, where he found the philosopher in a room darkened, with³ his eyes misty and his face pale.

'Sir,' said he, 'you are come at a time when all human friendship is useless; what I suffer cannot be remedied, what I have lost cannot be supplied. My daughter, from whose⁴ tenderness I expected all the comforts⁵ of my age,⁶ died last night of a fever. My views, my purposes, my hopes, are at an end; I am now a lonely being disunited from society.'

'Sir,' said the prince, 'mortality is an event by which a wise man can never be surprised; we know that death is always near⁷; and it should, therefore, always be expected.'—'Young man,' answered the philosopher, 'you speak like one⁸ that has never felt the pangs of separation.'—'Have you then forgot the precepts,' said

Rasselas, 'which you so powerfully enforced?'⁹ Has wisdom no strength to arm the heart against calamity? Consider, that external things are naturally variable, truth and reason are always the same.'—'What comfort,' said the mourner, 'can truth and reason afford me? of what effect are they now, but to tell me that my daughter will not be restored?'

The prince, whose humanity would not suffer him to insult misery with reproof, went away, convinced of the emptiness of rhetorical sound, and the inefficacy of polished periods and studied sentences.—JOHNSON.

¹ To pay a visit=*faire une visite*. ² Now (time past)=*alors*.
³ See Ex. XXIX. Note ³, Part I. ⁴ Turn, from the tenderness of whom. ⁵ Comfort = *consolation*. ⁶ Age = *vieillesse*. ⁷ Near (adjective) = *proche*. ⁸ Like one = *comme un homme*. ⁹ Which you so powerfully enforced=*que vous avez démontrés avec tant de force*.

XI.—WHAT GOVERNMENTAL MEN SHOULD BE.

Every good political institution must have a preventive operation as well as a remedial. It ought to have a natural tendency to exclude bad men from government, and not to trust for the safety of the state to subsequent punishment¹ alone; punishment, which has ever been tardy and uncertain; and which, when power is suffered in bad hands, may chance² to fall rather on the injured than the criminal.

Before³ men are put forward into the great trusts of the State, they ought⁴ by their conduct to have obtained such a degree of estimation in their country, as may be some sort of pledge and security to the public, that they will not abuse those trusts. It is no mean security for⁵ a proper

use of power, that a man has shown by the general tenor of his actions, that the affection, the good opinion, the confidence, of his fellow-citizens have been among the principal objects of his life; and that he has owed none of the gradations of his power or fortune to a settled contempt, or occasional forfeiture of their esteem.

That man who before he comes into power is obliged to desert his friends, or who, losing it, has no friends to sympathise with him; he who has no sway among any part of the landed or commercial interest, but whose whole importance has begun with his office, and is sure to end with it,⁶ is a person who ought never to be suffered by a controlling Parliament to continue in any of those situations which confer the lead and direction of all our public affairs; because such a man has⁷ no connection with the interest of the people.

Those knots or cabals of men who have got together, avowedly without any public principle, in order to sell their conjunct iniquity at the higher rate, and are therefore universally odious, ought never to be suffered to domineer in the State; because they have no connection with the sentiments and opinions of the people.—
BURKE.

¹ *Châtiment.* ² *And which . . . may chance to fall = et il peut se faire qu'il tombe.* ³ *Before men . . . trusts of the state = avant de mettre en avant des hommes à qui l'on doit confier les rênes de l'Etat.* ⁴ *They ought by their conduct to have obtained = on devrait voir, si, par leur conduite, ils ont gagné.* In the sentences ³ and ⁴, the passive form is avoided; and in the sentence ³, the infinitive is used *avant de mettre*, and not the subjunctive, *avant qu'on mit*, because the verbs in both sentences ³ and ⁴, subordinate and principal, are written in the same person. See Ex. III. Note ¹, and Ex. XXVII. Note ¹¹, Part I. ⁵ *It is no mean security for a proper use of power = c'est une garantie importante que le pouvoir sera entre bonnes mains.* ⁶ Personal pronouns referring to things cannot be used after prepositions. The sentence, in order to avoid *with it*, may be turned into *whose whole importance has begun, and*

is sure to end, with his office. ⁷ Because such a man has . . . interest of the people=*car un pareil homme n'a rien de commun avec le peuple, au point de vue des intérêts, or quant aux intérêts.* See Ex. LIX. Note ², Part I.

XII.—LUXURY.

Luxury is a word of uncertain signification, and may be taken in a good ¹ as well as in a bad sense. In general, it means great refinement in the gratification of the senses; and any ² degree of it may be innocent or blamable, according to the age, or country, or condition of the person. The bounds between the virtue and the vice cannot here be exactly fixed, more ³ than in other moral subjects. To imagine, that the gratifying of any sense, or the indulging of any delicacy in meat, drink, or apparel, is of ⁴ itself a vice, can never enter into a head that is not disordered by the frenzies of enthusiasm. I have, indeed, heard of a monk abroad, who, because the windows of his cell opened ⁵ upon a noble prospect, made a *covenant with his eyes* never to turn that way, ⁶ or ⁷ receive so sensual a gratification. And such is the crime of drinking champagne or Burgundy, preferable ⁸ to small beer or porter. These indulgences are only vices, when they are pursued at the expense ⁹ of some virtue, as liberality or charity; in like manner as ¹⁰ they are follies, when for them a man ruins ¹¹ his fortune, and reduces himself to want and beggary. Where they entrench ¹² upon no virtue, but leave ample subject whence to provide for friends, family, and every proper object of generosity or compassion, they are entirely innocent, and have in every age ¹³ been acknowledged ¹⁴ such by almost all moralists. To be entirely occupied with ¹⁵ the luxury of the table, for instance, without any relish for the pleasures of ambition, study, or conversation, is a mark of

stupidity, and is incompatible with any vigour of temper or genius. To confine one's expense entirely to such a gratification, without regard to friends or family, is an indication of a heart destitute of humanity or benevolence. But if a man reserve time sufficient¹⁶ for all laudable pursuits, and money sufficient for all generous purposes, he is free¹⁷ from every shadow of blame or reproach.—D. HUME.

¹ In a good, bad sense=*en bonne, mauvaise part*. ² Any degree of it=*n'emporte quelle quantité*. ³ Turn, cannot here be fixed more exactly than. ⁴ Of itself=*en soi*. ⁵ Opened upon a noble prospect=*s'ouvraient devant un panorama magnifique*. To open (active)=*ouvrir*, to open (neuter)=*s'ouvrir*. It is the same with many verbs. Note.—When active verbs are used as neuter verbs in English, they often become reflexive in French. Ex.: *tourner, préparer, déclarer, rencontrer*, etc. ⁶ That way=*de ce côté-là, dans cette direction-là*. That way is translated by *par là*, and this way by *par ici*, when the way is indicated with the finger, or any other sign. ⁷ Turn, and never to receive. ⁸ Preferable=*de préférence*, when used for the adverb *preferably*. ⁹ Dépens (in the plural). ¹⁰ In like manner as=*de même que*.—They are follies. See Ex. XIII. Note ¹⁴, Part I. ¹¹ Ruins his fortune=*se ruine*. ¹² Emptier (to encroach). ¹³ In every age=*de tous temps*. ¹⁴ To acknowledge=*reconnaître comme*. ¹⁵ See Ex. XII. Note ⁹, Part I. ¹⁶ Time sufficient, money sufficient. Turn, enough time, enough money. ¹⁷ He is free from . . . = *Personne ne peut le blâmer ou lui reprocher quoi que ce soit*.

XIII.—ELEPHANT HUNTING.¹

On the following day, when my men were cutting² up the elephant, great numbers of the villagers came to enjoy the feast. We were on the side of a fine green valley, studded here³ and there with trees, and cut by numerous rivulets. I had⁴ retired from the noise to take an observation among some rocks of laminated grit,⁵ when I beheld an elephant and her calf⁶ at the end of the valley, about⁷ two miles distant. The calf was rolling⁸ in the mud, and the dam was standing fanning herself with her great ears. As I looked

at them through my glass, I saw a long string of my own men appearing on the other side of them, and Sekwebu came and told me that these had⁹ gone off, saying, 'Our father will see to-day what sort of men he has got.' I then went higher up the side of the valley, in order to have a distinct view of their mode of hunting. The goodly beast, totally¹⁰ unconscious of the approach of an enemy, stood for some time suckling her young¹¹ one, which¹² seemed about two years old; they then went into a pit containing mud, and smeared themselves all over¹³ with¹⁴ it, the little one frisking about his dam, flapping his ears and tossing his trunk incessantly, in¹⁵ elephantine fashion. She kept¹⁶ flapping her ears and wagging her tail, as if¹⁷ in the height of enjoyment. Then began the piping of their enemies, which was performed by¹⁸ blowing into a tube, or the hands closed together, as boys do into a key. They call out to attract the animal's attention :—

*' O chief! chief! we have come to kill you,
O chief! chief! many more will die besides you,
The gods have said it,' etc.*

Both animals expanded their ears and listened, then left their bath as the crowd rushed towards them. The little one ran forward towards the end of the valley, but, seeing the men there, returned to his dam. She placed herself on the danger¹⁰ side of her calf, and passed her proboscis over it again²⁰ and again, as if to²¹ assure it of safety. She frequently looked back to the men, who²² kept up an incessant shouting, singing, and piping; then looked at her young one and ran after it, sometimes sideways, as if her feelings were divided between anxiety to protect her offspring, and desire to revenge the temerity of her persecutors.—LIVINGSTONE'S *Africa*.

¹ *Chasse à l'éléphant.* ² *To cut up=dépecer.* ³ *Studded here and there with trees=parsemé d'arbres çà et là.* *D'arbres* has only one sounded syllable, for *bres* is silent; therefore I placed *ça et là*, which has three sounded syllables, after *d'arbres*. ⁴ See Ex. IX. Note ¹¹, Part I. and Ex. XII. Note ⁵, Part III. ⁵ *Grès.* ⁶ *Petit* (masc.). ⁷ *About two miles distant=à une distance d'environ deux milles.* Translate, *two feet high; three yards wide*, etc. ⁸ See Ex. XII. Note ⁵, Part III. ⁹ *Had gone off, saying=étaient partis en disant.* See Ex. VI. Note ¹¹, Part II. ¹⁰ *Totally unconscious of=qui ignorait entièrement.* ¹¹ *Petit.* See Ex. XXXII. Note ⁴, Part II. ¹² *Which seemed about two years old=qui paraissait avoir environ deux ans.* ¹³ *All over=entièrement.* ¹⁴ *Turn, of it.* ¹⁵ *In elephantine fashion=à la façon des éléphants.* ¹⁶ *Kept flapping her ears=continuait à battre des oreilles.* ¹⁷ *As if in the height of enjoyment=comme si elle était au comble de la joie.* (*Comble=climax.*) ¹⁸ See Ex. VII. Note ³, Part I. ¹⁹ *On the danger side of her calf=du côté du danger pour en protéger son petit.* ²⁰ *Again and again=constamment.* ²¹ *As if to=comme pour.* ²² *Who kept up incessant=qui ne cessaient de*, followed by the infinitive of the verbs *to shout, to sing, to pipe=crier, chanter, siffler.*

XIV.—ELEPHANT HUNTING (*End*).

The men kept¹ about a hundred yards² in her rear, and some that distance from her flanks, and continued thus until she was obliged to cross a rivulet. The time spent³ in descending and getting up the opposite bank allowed⁴ of their coming up to the edge, and discharging their spears at about⁵ twenty yards' distance. After the first discharge, she appeared with⁶ her sides red with⁷ blood, and, beginning to flee for⁸ her own life, seemed to think no more of her young. I had previously sent off Sekwebu with orders to spare the calf. It ran very fast, but neither⁹ young nor old ever enter into a gallop; their quickest pace is only a sharp walk. Before Sekwebu could reach them, the calf had taken¹⁰ refuge in the water, and was killed. The pace of the dam gradually became slower. She turned¹¹ with a shriek of rage, and made a furious charge back among the men. They vanished at right

angles to her course, or sideways, and, as she ran straight on, she went through the whole party, but came near no one, except a man who wore a piece of cloth on his shoulders. Bright clothing is always dangerous in these cases. She charged three or four times, and, except in the first instance, never went farther than¹³ one hundred yards. She often stood, after¹³ she had crossed a rivulet, and faced¹⁴ the men, though she received fresh¹⁵ spears. It was by this process of spearing and loss of blood that she was killed, for at last, making a short charge, she staggered¹⁶ round and sank¹⁷ down dead in a kneeling posture.

¹ *Kept, stood* = *se tenaient*. ² See Ex. XIII. Note 7, Part III. ³ *Spent in* = *dépensé à*. ⁴ *Allowed of their coming up* = *leur permit d'arriver*; the following verb *discharging* will of course be in the infinitive preceded by *de*, under the government of *permet*. ⁵ See Ex. XIII. Note 7, Part III. ⁶ See Ex. XXIX. Note 3, Part I. ⁷ See Ex. XII. Note 9, Part I. ⁸ *To flee for one's own life* = *chercher son salut dans la fuite*. ⁹ *Neither . . . into a gallop* = *ni les jeunes ni les vieux ne se mettent jamais à galoper*. ¹⁰ *To take refuge* = *se réfugier*. ¹¹ See Ex. XII. Note 5, Part III. ¹² See Ex. X. Note 4, Part I. ¹³ *After she had crossed* = *après avoir traversé*. See Ex. XXVII. Note 11, Part I. ¹⁴ *To face* = *faire face à, présenter le front à*. ¹⁵ *Nouveau*. Remember that the partitive article is always *de* before an adjective, whether the noun be masculine or feminine, singular or plural. ¹⁶ *To stagger round* = *chanceler*. ¹⁷ *Sank down in a kneeling posture* = *tomba morte sur ses genoux*.

XV.—HALLAM.

History, at least in its state of ideal perfection, is a compound of poetry and philosophy.

It is remarkable that the practice of separating the two ingredients of which history is composed has¹ become prevalent on the Continent as well as in this country. Italy has already produced a historical novel, of high merit and of still higher promise. In France, the practice² has been carried to a length somewhat whimsical. M. Sismondi publishes a grave and stately history of the

Merovingian kings, very valuable, and a little tedious. He then sends forth as³ a companion to it a novel, in which he attempts to give a lively representation of characters and manners. This course, as it seems to us, has all the disadvantages of a division of labour, and none of its advantages. We understand the expediency of keeping the functions of cook and coachman distinct. The dinner will be better dressed, and the horses better managed. But when the two situations are united, as in the *Maitre Jacques* of Molière, we do not see that the matter is⁴ much mended by the solemn form with which the pluralist passes from one of his employments to the other.

We manage⁵ those things better in England. Sir Walter Scott gives us a novel; Mr. Hallam a critical and argumentative history. Both are occupied⁶ with the same matter. But the former looks at it with the eye of a sculptor. His intention is to give an expression and lively image of its external form. The latter is an anatomist. His task is to dissect the subject to⁷ its inmost recesses, and to lay⁸ bare before us all the springs of motion and all the causes of decay.

Mr. Hallam is, on⁹ the whole, far better qualified than any other writer of our time for the office which he has undertaken. He has great industry and great acuteness. His knowledge is extensive, various, and profound. His mind is equally distinguished by the amplitude¹⁰ of its grasp, and by the delicacy of his tact. His speculations have none of that vagueness which is the common fault of political philosophy. On¹¹ the contrary, they are strikingly practical, and teach us not only the general rule, but the mode of applying it to solve particular cases.—MACAULAY'S *Essays*.

¹ Impersonal verbs or verbs used impersonally require the subjunctive mood. ² *En France, on a mis cela en pratique sur une*

échelle quelque peu fantasque. ³ *As a companion to it=pour l'accompagner.* ⁴ Verbs depending on a negative or an interrogative must be written in the subjunctive mood. ⁵ *Nous faisons mieux que cela en Angleterre.* ⁶ *To be occupied with=s'occuper de.* ⁷ *To its inmost recesses=jusqu'à ce qu'il en ait découvert les mystères les plus secrets.* ⁸ *To lay bare=mettre à nu.* ⁹ *On the whole=en somme, en résumé.* ¹⁰ *The amplitude of its grasp=l'étendue qu'il peut embrasser.* ¹¹ *On the contrary=au contraire.*

XVI.—THE GIANT AND THE DWARF.

Once upon a time,¹ a giant and a dwarf were friends, and kept² together. They made a bargain, that³ they would never forsake each other, but go and seek adventures.

The first battle⁴ they fought was with two Saracens, and the dwarf, who was very courageous, dealt one of the champions a most angry⁵ blow. It did the Saracen but very little injury, who,⁶ lifting up his sword, fairly struck off the poor dwarf's⁷ arm. He was now in a woful plight, but the giant, coming to his assistance, in a short time left the two Saracens dead on the plain, and the dwarf cut off the dead man's⁷ head out of spite.

They then travelled on to⁸ another adventure. This was against three bloody-minded satyrs, who were carrying away a young lady in distress.⁹ The dwarf was not quite so fierce as before,¹⁰ but for all that, struck the first blow, which was returned by another that knocked¹¹ out his¹² eye; but the giant was soon up¹³ with them, and had they not fled, would have certainly killed them every one. They were all very joyful at this victory, and the lady, who had been relieved, fell in love with¹⁴ the giant and married him.

They now travelled far, and farther than I¹⁵ can tell, till they met with a company of robbers. The giant, for the first time, was foremost¹⁶ now; but the dwarf was not far behind. The battle

was stout¹⁷ and long. Wherever the giant came, all fell before him; but the dwarf had¹⁸ like to have been killed, more than¹⁹ once. At last the victory declared for the two adventurers; but the dwarf lost his²⁰ leg. The dwarf had now lost an arm, an eye, and a leg, while the giant, who was without a single wound, cried out to his little companion: 'My little hero, this is a glorious sport, let us get²¹ one victory more, and then we shall have honour for ever.'

'No,' cried the dwarf, who was by this time grown wiser, 'no, I declare off,²² I'll fight no more; for I find in every battle that you get²³ all the honours and rewards, but all the blows fall upon me.'—GOLDSMITH.

¹ *Once upon a time*=*une fois*. Fairy tales generally begin in French thus: *il était une fois*. ² *To keep together*=*être des amis inséparables*. ³ *Turn, never to forsake each other*. ⁴ See Ex. LXXVII. Note ⁶, Part I. ⁵ *Furieux*. ⁶ *Turn, it did very little injury to the Saracen, who*. See Rule, Ex. VII. Note ², Part I. ⁷ See Ex. LXXVIII. Note ⁷, Part I. ⁸ *To another adventure*=*à la recherche d'une autre aventure*. ⁹ *In distress*=*réduite au désespoir*. ¹⁰ See Ex. XIX. Note ², Part I. ¹¹ *To knock out*=*faire sauter*. ¹² See Ex. LXXVIII. Note ⁷, Part I. ¹³ *Up with them*=*auprès d'eux*. ¹⁴ *To fall in love with*=*devenir amoureux de*. ¹⁵ See Ex. IV. Note and Rule ¹³, Part II. ¹⁶ *Foremost*=*le plus en avant*. ¹⁷ *Opiniâtre*. ¹⁸ *Had like to have been killed*=*manqua d'être tué*. ¹⁹ See Ex. X. Note ⁴, Part I. ²⁰ *Lost his leg*=*perdit une jambe*. The sentence is not *se perdit la jambe*, as might be concluded from Ex. LXXVIII. Note ⁷, Part I. The case is not the same: the possessor of the leg is known here; *the possessor* is the subject of the sentence: *the dwarf lost his leg*. There is no misunderstanding possible as to the possessor of the leg: *the dwarf* could not lose anybody else's leg. But if I wanted to translate, *the dwarf cut off his leg*, I should say *le nain se coupa la jambe*. In saying *le nain coupa la jambe*, I should not express whose leg he cut off. ²¹ See Ex. LXXVII. Note ⁶, Part I. ²² *I declare off*=*je me retire, j'en ai assez*. ²³ *Gagner*.

XVII.—CREDULITY.

A Chaldean peasant was conducting a goat to the city of Bagdad. He was mounted on an ass, and the goat followed him, with¹ a bell suspended

to his neck. 'I shall sell these two animals,' said he to himself, 'for thirty pieces of silver; and with the money I can² purchase a new turban, and a rich vestment of taffety, which I will tie with³ a sash of purple silk. The young damsels will then smile more favourably upon me; and I shall be the finest man at the mosque.' Whilst the peasant was thus anticipating in idea his future enjoyments, three artful rogues concerted a stratagem to plunder him of his present treasures.

As he moved⁴ slowly along, one of them slipped off⁵ the bell from the goat's neck, and fastening it, without being perceived, to the tail of the ass, carried away his booty.

The man riding upon the ass, and hearing the sound of the bell, continued to muse, without⁶ the least suspicion of the loss he had sustained. Happening, however, a short while afterwards, to turn about his⁷ head, he discovered, with grief and astonishment, that the animal was gone, which⁸ constituted so considerable a part of his riches; and he inquired,⁹ with the utmost anxiety, after his goat, of every traveller whom he met¹⁰ with on the road.

The second rogue now accosted him, and said: 'I have¹¹ just seen in yonder fields a man in great haste, dragging along with him a goat.' The peasant dismounted with great precipitation, and requested the obliging stranger to hold his ass, that¹² he might lose no time in overtaking the thief.

He instantly began the pursuit, and having traversed in vain that course¹³ that was pointed out to him, he came back, fatigued and breathless, to the place from whence he had set out: where he neither found his ass, nor the deceitful informer to whose care he had intrusted him.

As he walked pensively onwards, overwhelmed¹⁴ with shame, vexation, and disappointment, his

attention was roused by the loud complaints and lamentations of a poor man who was sitting by¹⁵ the side of a well. He turned out of his way to sympathise with a brother in affliction, recounted his own misfortunes, and inquired the cause of that violent sorrow which seemed to oppress him.

'Alas!' said the poor man, in¹⁶ the most piteous tone of voice, 'as I was resting here to drink, I dropped into the water a casket full of diamonds, which I was employed to carry to the Caliph of Bagdad, and I shall be put to death on the suspicion of having secreted¹⁷ so valuable a treasure.'—'Why do you not jump into the well in search of the casket?' cried the peasant, astonished at the stupidity of his new acquaintance.—'Because it is deep,' replied the man, 'and I¹⁸ can neither dive nor swim; but if you will¹⁹ undertake this kind office for me, I will reward you with thirty pieces of silver.'

The peasant accepted the offer with exultation, and whilst he was putting off his cassock, vest, and slippers, expressed his gratitude to the holy prophet for his providential succour. But the moment he plunged into the water in search of the pretended casket, the man, who was one of the three rogues that had concerted the plan of robbing him, seized²⁰ upon his garments, and bore²¹ them off in security to his comrades.

Thus through inattention, simplicity, and credulity, was the unfortunate Chaldean duped of all his little possessions.—PERCIVAL.

¹ See Ex. XXIX. Note ³, Part I. ² Use the future of *pouvoir*, because a future action is implied. ³ *Avec*. It means *with the help of, by means of*. See Ex. XII. Note ⁹, Part I. ⁴ *As he moved slowly along*=*comme il s'en allait lentement le long du chemin*. ⁵ *To slip off*=*détacher*. ⁶ Turn, *without having*. ⁷ See Ex. XVI. Note ²⁰, Part III. ⁸ See Ex. VII. Note ³, Part I. ⁹ *To inquire after*=*prendre des informations sur, s'enquérir de*. ¹⁰ *To meet, to meet with* (by chance)=*rencontrer*. ¹¹ *To have just*=*venir de*. ¹² *In order that*. ¹³ *Course*=*route*. ¹⁴ *Overwhelmed with*=*accablé de*.

¹⁵ *By the side of a well*=*près d'un puits*. ¹⁶ *De*. ¹⁷ *Secreted*=*caché*.
¹⁸ See Ex. XVII. Note ⁵, Part I. ¹⁹ The verb *vouloir* should be used. ²⁰ *To seize upon*=*s'emparer de*. ²¹ *Bore them off*=*les emporta*.

XVIII.—ELIZABETH.

Elizabeth, in¹ her person, was masculine, tall, straight, and strong-limbed,² with³ high round forehead, brown eyes, fair complexion, fine white teeth, and yellow hair; she danced with great agility, her voice was strong and shrill; she understood music, and played upon⁴ several instruments. She possessed an excellent memory, and * understood the dead and living languages,⁵ and * made good proficiency in the sciences, and was well read⁶ in history. Her conversation was sprightly and agreeable, her judgment solid, her apprehension acute, her application indefatigable, and her courage invincible. She was the great bulwark of the Protestant religion; she was highly commendable for her general regard to the impartial administration of justice; and even for her rigid economy, which saved⁷ the public money, and evinced that love for her people, which⁸ she so warmly professed.

Yet, she deviated from justice in some instances when her interest and passions were concerned⁹; and, notwithstanding all her great qualities, we cannot deny¹⁰ she was vain, proud, imperious, and in some cases cruel: her predominant passions were jealousy and avarice; though she was also subject to such violent gusts of anger, as¹¹ overwhelmed all regard to the dignity of her station, and even hurried her¹² beyond the common bounds of decency. She was wise and steady in her principles of government, and above¹³ all princes fortunate in her¹⁴ ministry.—
 SMOLLETT.

¹ *De.* ² *Strong-limbed=fortement bâtie.* ³ Put a semi-colon, and literally say: *she had the forehead high and round, the eyes brown, the complexion fair, the teeth fine and white, and the hair yellow (blond).* See Ex. XVI. Note ²⁰, Part III. ⁴ *To play, to play upon,* before the name of instruments, are translated by *jouer de.* ⁵ *Language=langue.* *Langage* means the tenor of the language. ⁶ *Well read in=versée dans.* ⁷ *Ménager.* ⁸ See Ex. VII. Note ², Part I. ⁹ *When her interest and passions were concerned=quand il s'agissait de ses intérêts ou de ses passions.* *S'agir*, impersonal=*to be the question.* Ex.: *The question is whether I must go or not=il s'agit de savoir si je dois y aller ou non.* See Ex. XXXVIII. Note ², Part I. In French, the verb *aller* must always be used with *y*, referring to the place that has been previously named. *Aller* is never used, as in English, by itself, except in the future, for reason of euphony. *J'y irai* would sound very unpleasantly to the ear. The same should be said of the conditional. ¹⁰ *To deny=nier*, the contrary of *affirmer.* *To deny*, speaking of principles, opinions, doctrines, etc., is translated by *renier.* ¹¹ *Subject to such violent gusts of anger as overwhelmed all regard to the dignity of her station=sujette à des accès de colère violents qui lui faisaient oublier le respect qu'elle devait à la dignité de son rang et de sa personne.* ¹² *Hurried her=la précipitèrent.* ¹³ *Above all princes=plus que tout autre prince.* ¹⁴ *In her ministry=dans le choix de ses ministres.*

XIX.—LOUIS XVI.

Louis XVI. was an arbitrary monarch: that is,¹ in other words, neither more nor less, than because he was Louis XVI., and because he had the misfortune to be born king of France, with the prerogatives of which, a long line of ancestors, and a long acquiescence of the people, without any act of his,² had put him in possession. A misfortune it has indeed turned out to him, that he was born king of France. But misfortune is not crime, nor³ is indiscretion always the greatest guilt. I shall never think that a prince, the acts of whose whole reign were a series of concessions to his subjects, who was willing⁴ to relax his authority, to remit his prerogatives, to call his people to a share of freedom, not known, perhaps not desired by their ancestors; such a prince, though he should be subject to the common

frailties attached to men and princes, though he should have once thought it⁵ necessary to provide force against the desperate designs manifestly carrying on against his person, and the remnants of his authority; though all this should be taken into consideration, I shall be led with great difficulty to think he deserves the cruel and insulting triumph of Paris. I tremble for the cause of liberty, from⁶ such an example to kings. I tremble for the cause of humanity, in⁷ the unpunished outrages of the most wicked of mankind. But there are some people of that low and degenerate fashion of mind, that they look up⁸ with a sort of complacent awe and admiration to kings, who know to keep⁹ firm in¹⁰ their seat, to hold a strict hand over their subjects, to assert their prerogative, and by the awakened vigilance of a severe despotism, to guard against the very first approaches of freedom. Against such as these, they never elevate their voice. Deserters from principle, listed with fortune, they never see any¹¹ good in suffering virtue, nor¹² any crime in prosperous usurpation.—BURKE'S *Reflections on the Revolution in France*.

¹ That is, in other words, neither more nor less, than because he was Louis XVI.=ce qui, en d'autres mots, veut simplement dire qu'il était Louis XVI. Translate the following because by que.

² Without any act of his to be put in the end of the phrase. Sans qu'aucun acte émanât de lui. ³ Turn, and indiscretion is not. Ni is repeated before several words in one negative sentence, but is never used to connect two different sentences together, whether they are both negative or only one of them. I like neither this nor that=je n'aime ni ceci ni cela. ⁴ Who was willing to=qui consentait à. ⁵ See Ex. XVI. Note 7, Part I. ⁶ From such an example to kings=quand je considère cet exemple que l'on donne aux rois.

⁷ In the unpunished outrages of the most wicked of mankind=quand je vois les plus méchants des hommes commettre impunément de pareilles actions. ⁸ To look up to=regarder. ⁹ To keep firm=se tenir ferme. ¹⁰ Sur. ¹¹ They never see any good in suffering virtue=ils ne voient jamais à quoi cela peut servir d'être vertueux et de souffrir. ¹² See Note 3 above.

XX.—THE VICAR OF WAKEFIELD ON MATRIMONY.

Matrimony was always one of my favourite topics, and I wrote several sermons to prove its¹ happiness: but there was a peculiar tenet which I made a point² of supporting; for I maintained, with Whiston, that it³ was unlawful for a priest of the Church of England, after the death of his first wife, to take a second⁴; or, to express it in one word, I valued myself upon being a strict monogamist.

I was early initiated into this important dispute, on which many laborious volumes have been written. I published some tracts upon the subject myself, which, as they never⁵ sold, I have the consolation of thinking, are read only by the happy few.⁶ Some of my friends called this my weak side; but, alas! they had not made it⁷ a subject of long contemplation. The more⁸ I reflected upon it, the more important it appeared. I even went a step beyond Whiston in displaying my principles: as he had engraven upon his wife's tomb that she was the only wife of William Whiston; so I wrote a similar epitaph for my wife, though still living, in which I extolled her prudence, economy, and obedience till death; and having got it copied fair,⁹ with an elegant frame, it was placed over the chimney-piece, where it answered¹⁰ several very useful purposes. It admonished my wife of her duty to me, and my fidelity to her; it inspired¹¹ her with a passion for fame: and constantly put¹² her in mind of her end.—OLIVER GOLDSMITH.

¹ See Ex. XXXII. Note ⁶, Part I. ² *To make a point of* = *se faire un devoir de*. ³ See Rule, Ex. XVI. Note ⁷, Part I. ⁴ Turn, *to take a second of them*. ⁵ *To sell* is neuter here. See Ex. XII. Note ⁶, Part III. ⁶ *The happy few* = *le petit nombre des privilégiés*. ⁷ Turn,

made of it. ⁸ *The more I reflected upon it, the more important it appeared*=*plus j'y réfléchissais, plus il me paraissait important.* The is left out and *plus* must be followed by the subject of the verb. ⁹ *Having got it copied fair*=*l'ayant fait recopier par une belle main.* ¹⁰ *It answered several very useful purposes*=*il rendit plusieurs services très utiles.* ¹¹ See Ex. XXVI. Note ⁵, Part III. ¹² *To put some one in mind of something*=*rappeler quelque chose à quelqu'un.* See Ex. XXVI. Note ⁵, Part III.

XXI.—JOHANN JACOBY.

The papers all speak charitably, if not kindly, of Johann Jacoby, who died on Tuesday at Königsberg. During recent years he had not been actively associated with any existing party, though his original personal and political friends, like Duncker and Virchow, are Progressists; but he had shown some sympathy with the social Democrats. With their visionary schemes he could have nothing to do, but they represented the most extreme form of opposition. Between the characters of Jacoby and Lassalle there was a good deal in common, for both were men of high culture, of keen and clear intellects, and of perfectly fearless natures. But the modern leaders of the Socialists are quite different persons, and Jacoby's connection with them was purely formal.

Even the *Post* pays a tribute, unwilling but just, to the intense earnestness and the fearless candour of the great agitator. It is,¹ perhaps, not too much to say that his trenchant pamphlet,² the '*Vier Fragen*,' made the revolution of 1848, and gave Prussia her written constitution and her parliament. Even those who were not convinced by the iron logic of the work were amazed and captivated by the audacity of the author, who posted³ a copy directly to his majesty Frederic William IV. That prince had, however, as little respect for courage as for justice, and he

summoned his courts to punish the bold Jew. The most dramatic incident in Jacoby's career was, however, in 1848, when a deputation, of which he was a member, waited⁴ upon the king to present an address from the Diet. The king took the paper and turned away. Jacoby stepped⁵ forward and said, 'Your majesty!'⁶ we are not come simply to present this paper, but also to discuss with you the condition of the country. Will you listen to us?' 'No!' replied the king gruffly and rudely. Jacoby turned⁷ to his companions, and, in tones that rang⁸ through the palace, said 'It⁹ is the misfortune of kings that they are unwilling to hear the truth!' Never before had such a sentiment been hurled in the face of Frederic William IV.; and if that had been possible, his vengeance would certainly have fallen upon the indomitable deputy. A curious discussion was provoked by this incident. The enemies of Jacoby had always described him as a Republican, but Dr. Weiss maintained that this famous sentence proved just the contrary. If Jacoby had been a Republican, said his apologist, he would have said that it was the fortune, not the misfortune, of kings that they will not hear the truth. The point is perhaps a fine¹⁰ one. In fact, Jacoby had no intention in 1848 of overturning the institution of monarchy, but on¹¹ the other hand he had certainly no abstract regard for crowns and thrones.

The last time when¹² Jacoby got¹³ into trouble for his opinions was in 1870. He alone, or almost alone, of his countrymen attempted to confront the frenzy of national exultation with a protest against the plan to annex Alsace-Lorraine without the consent of the people of those provinces. But there happened¹⁴ to be a general commanding at Königsberg, who, being several hundred

miles from the seat of real war, gloriously attacked and captured the Hebrew doctor of medicine. As no martial law existed at the time¹⁵ there were people¹⁶ who timidly whispered that this was an outrage. Bismarck, who was then at Versailles, paid¹⁷ no attention to the complaints on the subject until the English Press began to denounce the affair, and then Jacoby was suddenly released without trial, without any satisfaction whatever. Only history will judge between him and General Von Falkenstein. Although Jacoby was very old—he was born in 1805—his general health was good, and the circumstances of his death were like those of the Emperor Napoleon. The operation was completed, but he only survived it¹⁸ three days, and died after intense suffering.¹⁹—*Daily News*, March 12, 1877.

¹ It is not too much to say=*ce n'est pas aller trop loin que de dire*, or *ce n'est pas exagérer*. ² Pamphlet mordant. ³ To post=*envoyer par la poste*. ⁴ To wait upon=*se présenter à, se présenter chez*. ⁵ To step forward=*s'avancer*. ⁶ Your majesty is not translated by *votre majesté*, in the vocative case. It is *sire* or *madame*, according as you speak to a king or a queen, an emperor or an empress. ⁷ To turn to=*se tourner vers*. ⁸ To ring=*résonner*. ⁹ It is the misfortune of kings that they are unwilling to hear the truth=*les rois ne veulent pas entendre la vérité, voilà or c'est là leur malheur*. ¹⁰ Fine=*subtil*. ¹¹ On the other hand=*d'un autre côté*. ¹² When=*que*. Begin the sentence thus: *Ce fut en 1870 que . . .* ¹³ To get into trouble=*être tourmenté*. ¹⁴ But there happened to be=*mais il se trouva là*. ¹⁵ At the time=*au moment, à cette époque*. ¹⁶ There were people=*il y eut des gens*. ¹⁷ To pay attention=*faire attention*. ¹⁸ To survive=*survivre à* (to it=*y*, before the verb). ¹⁹ After intense suffering=*après d'horribles souffrances*.

XXII.—THE MICROSCOPE MORALISED.

'You know the use of that *solar microscope*, and are able to inform¹ me of its² effects.

'Theron. I ought to be pretty well acquainted³ with these experiments, since it has⁴ long been

my favourite diversion to employ a few spare⁶ hours in such agreeable speculations.

'*Aspasio*. You have seen the body of an insect accommodated to the surprising instrument. When in this situation, the animal was pricked by a very fine needle; your eye, your naked eye, just⁶ perceived the *puncture*; and discovered, perhaps, a *speck* of moisture oozing from the orifice. But in⁷ what manner were they represented by the magnifying instrument?

'*Ther*. The puncture was widened into a frightful *gash*. The speck of moisture swelled into a copious stream; and flowed, like a *torrent*, from the gaping⁸ wound. An ox, under the sacrificing knife, scarce looks more bulky, or bleeds more largely.

'*Asp*. Don't you apprehend my design? If *we*, short-sighted mortals, and almost blinded with⁹ self-love; if *we* cannot but be sensible of our faults; how¹⁰ flagrant must they appear, in what enormous magnitude, and with what aggravating circumstances, to an eye perfectly pure and infinitely penetrating?'—SOUTHEY'S COMMON-PLACE BOOK (HERVEY'S *Dialogues*).

¹ *Dire*. ² See Ex. XXXII. Note ⁶, Part I. ³ *To be pretty well acquainted with*=être assez bien au fait de. ⁴ *Since* (prep.)=*depuis*; *since* (conj.)=*puisque*, after which the present of the indicative must be used, because the action expressed by the verb is still going on. *Since I was or have been here*=depuis que je suis ici. *Since it has long been*=puisque c'est depuis longtemps. ⁵ *Spare hours*=heures de loisir. ⁶ *A peine*. See Ex. I. Note ², Part I. ⁷ *In what manner*=de quelle manière or comment. ⁸ *Gaping wound*=plaie béante. ⁹ *Par*. ¹⁰ See Ex. XXXIX. Note ³, Part I.

XXIII.—GENEROSITY A VIRTUE OF HEALTH.

If it¹ was necessary here, or² there was time to refine upon this doctrine, one might further³ maintain, exclusive⁴ of the happiness which the

mind itself feels in the exercise of this virtue, that the very body of man is never in a better state than when⁵ he is most inclined to do good offices: that as⁶ nothing more contributes to health than a benevolence of temper, so nothing generally was a stronger indication of it.

And what seems to confirm this opinion, is an observation, the truth of which must be submitted to every one's reflection, namely, that a disinclination and backwardness to good, is often attended,⁷ if not produced, by an indisposition of the animal as well as rational part of us:⁸ so naturally do the soul and body mutually befriend, or prey upon⁹ each other. And indeed, setting aside all abstruser reasoning upon the point, I cannot conceive, but that the very *mechanical motions* which maintain life, must be performed with more equal vigour and freedom in that man whom a great and good soul perpetually inclines to show mercy to the miserable, than they can¹⁰ be in a poor, sordid, selfish wretch, whose little, contracted heart melts at no man's affection; but sits brooding so intently over its own plots and concerns, as to see and feel nothing; and, in truth, enjoying nothing beyond himself.—STERNE'S *Sermons*.

¹ See Ex. XVI. Note 7, Part I. ² See Ex. XVII. Note 5, Part I.
³ *Further=encore.* ⁴ *Exclusive* (used as an adverb)=*indépendamment.* ⁵ Avoid *quand* after *que*. See Ex. XIX. Note 10, Part II.
⁶ *As . . . so=comme . . . de même.* ⁷ *Attended=accompagné, suivi.* ⁸ *Of us=de nous-mêmes.* ⁹ See Ex. LXXV. Note 3, Part I.
¹⁰ See Rule, Ex. IV. Note 13, Part II.

XXIV.—INSECTS BETTER GOVERNED THAN MEN.

He that shall well consider the commonwealth of the bees; how¹ strict they are within the territories of their own hives; how just they are

in putting² those statutes in execution concerning idle persons and vagabonds, and likewise the employment of day-labourers; what an excellent order there appears³ between them; how great the obedience is from the inferior to the superior; he will easily confess that the greatest temporal happiness of man, which consists in a good government, whereby he is secured of his person and state, is much more eminently discerned amongst beasts than amongst men. I will not only insist on the bee, who seems to teach us a platform and a precedent of a perfect monarchy: it is long since⁴ agreed and concluded in philosophy, that such disorder, such difference and disagreement, such hate and enmity, as is between man and man, cannot be found in the rest of the creatures, *nisi inter dispares feras*, unless⁵ it⁶ be in⁷ beasts of a different kind, and in the deserts and wilderness where ravenous creatures do together inhabit. Such is the providence and government of nature, that they live as peaceably as we do⁸ in our best walled fortresses and towns: the city gates, though shut, yet sometimes threaten as dangerous home-bred conspiracies, as they do secure of⁹ outward* foreign invasions.—GOODMAN'S *Fall of Man*.

¹ See Ex. XXXIX. Note ⁹, Part I. ² *To put in execution*=*mettre à exécution*. ³ *There appears*=*semble régner*. ⁴ *It is long since*=*il y a longtemps que* (on a, etc.). ⁵ The three conjunctive locutions: *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, and *à moins que* require the subjunctive and *ne* before the verb in the subjunctive. ⁶ *Cela*. ⁷ *Chez*. ⁸ *Turn*, *as we*. Do not translate *do*. ⁹ *To secure of*=*défendre, protéger contre*.

XXV.—BONAPARTE'S EXPEDIENT.

When Bonaparte put the Duke D'Enghien to death, all Paris felt¹ so much horror at the event that the throne of the tyrant trembled under him.

A counter revolution was expected, and would most probably have taken place, had not Bonaparte ordered² a new ballet to be brought out,³ with the utmost splendour, at the Opera. The subject he pitched upon was, '*Ossian, or the Bards.*' It is still recollected in Paris as perhaps the grandest *spectacle* that had⁴ ever been exhibited there. The consequence was, that the murder of the Duke D'Enghien was totally forgotten.—SIR JOHN SINCLAIR.

¹ *All Paris felt so much horror at the event=tout Paris se sentit frappé de tant d'horreur à la nouvelle de l'événement.* ² See Ex. III. Note ¹, and Ex. VII. Note ⁴, Part I. ³ *To bring out at the Opera =représenter à l'Opéra.* ⁴ See Rule, Ex. XXXVIII. Note ¹⁰, Part I.

XXVI.—THE CATARACT OF YERVENKYLE.

We had been extremely anxious to see a cataract in winter, and that of Yervenkyle did not disappoint our expectations.

It is formed by the river Kyso, which, issuing from the lake of the same name, precipitates itself through some steep and rugged rocks, and falls, so far¹ as I can guess, from a height of about seventy yards. The water, dashing from rock to² rock, boils and foams till it reaches the bottom, where it pursues a more tranquil course, and, after³ making a large circuit, loses itself again between mountainous banks, which are covered with fir-trees. That⁴ we might have a more commanding view of the picture, we took our station on a high ground, from which we had a distant prospect of a large tract of country of a varied surface, and almost covered with woods of firs, the pleasing verdure of which, acquiring additional lustre from the solar rays, formed an agreeable contrast with the snow and masses of ice hanging from the margin over the cascade.

The fall presented¹ us with one of those appearances which we much desired to see, as being peculiar to the regions of the north, and which are never to² be met with in Italy. The water, throwing itself amidst enormous masses of ice, which here³ and there have the aspect of gloomy vaults fringed with curious crystallizations, and the cold being of such rigour as⁴ almost to freeze the agitated waves and vapours in the air, had formed gradually two bridges of ice across the cascade, of such solidity and strength, that men passed over them in perfect security. The waves raging and foaming below with a vast noise, were in a state of such violent motion, as to spout water now⁵ and then on the top of the bridge; a circumstance which rendered its¹⁰ surface so exceedingly slippery, that the peasants were obliged to pass it¹¹ creeping on their hands and knees.—ACERBI.

¹ So far as=*autant que*. ² From rock to rock=*de rocher en rocher*. From time to time=*de temps en temps*. From door to door=*de porte en porte*. ³ See Ex. XVII. Note 7, Part I. ⁴ In order that. ⁵ To present some one with something=*présenter quelque chose à quelqu'un*. Active verbs are nearly always used with the noun of thing in the accusative and the noun of person in the dative. Ex.: To ask some one for something=*demander quelque chose à quelqu'un*. To buy something of some one=*acheter quelque chose à quelqu'un*. The fall presented us with one of those appearances=*la cascade nous présentait or nous offrait un de ces spectacles*. ⁶ Which are never to be met. Turn, which one can never meet. ⁷ Here and there=*ça et là*. ⁸ Such . . . as=*tel . . . que*. ⁹ Now and then=*quelquefois, de temps en temps*. ¹⁰ See Ex. XXXII. Note 6, Part I. ¹¹ See Ex. VI. Note 11, Part II.

XXVII.—FREDERIC THE GREAT AND THE LIBERTY OF THE PRESS.

Considered as an¹ administrator, Frederic had undoubtedly many titles to praise. Order was strictly maintained throughout his dominions.

Property was secure. A great liberty of speaking and of writing was allowed. Confident in the irresistible strength derived from a great army, the king looked down on² malcontents and libellers with a wise disdain, and gave little encouragement to spies and informers. When he was told of the disaffection of one of his subjects, he merely asked: 'How many thousand³ men can he bring into the field?' He once saw a crowd staring at something on a wall. He rode up and found that the object of curiosity was a scurrilous placard against himself. The placard had been posted up so high that it was not easy to read it. Frederic ordered⁴ his attendants to take it down and put it lower. 'My people and I,' he said, 'have come to an agreement which satisfies us both. They are⁵ to say what they please, and I am to do what I please.' No person would have dared to publish in London satires on George the Second approaching to the atrocity of those satires on Frederic, which the booksellers sold at Berlin with impunity.

Even among statesmen accustomed to the licence of a free press, such steadfastness of mind as this is not very common.—MACAULAY'S *Historical Essays*.

¹ See Ex. II. Note 12, Part II. ² To look down on = *traiter*.
³ After *how many*, the noun *millier* must be used. *Combien de milliers d'hommes*. ⁴ Ordered his attendants to take it down and put it lower = *ordonna aux gens de sa suite de l'enlever et de le placer plus bas*. ⁵ They are to say what they please = *ils peuvent dire ce qui leur plait*.

XXVIII.—MEN OF BUSINESS.

There is scarce a thinking man in the world, who is involved in the business of it, but¹ lives under a secret impatience of the hurry and

fatigue he suffers, and has formed a resolution to fix himself, one time² or other, in such a state, as is suitable to the end of his being. You hear men every day in conversation profess, that all the honour, power, and riches which they propose to themselves, cannot give satisfaction enough to reward them for half the anxiety they undergo in the pursuit, or possession of them. While men are in this temper, how inconsistent are they with themselves! They are wearied with the toil they bear, but cannot find in their hearts to relinquish it; retirement is what³ they want, but they cannot betake⁴ themselves to it; while they pant after shade and covert, they still affect to appear in the most glittering scenes of life: but sure this is just as reasonable as if a man should call⁵ for more lights, when he has a mind⁶ to go to sleep.

Since then it is certain that our own hearts deceive us in the love of the world, and that we cannot command⁷ ourselves enough to resign it, though we every day wish ourselves disengaged from its allurements; let us not stand upon a formal taking⁸ of leave, but wean ourselves from them, while we are in the midst of them.

It is certainly the general intention of the greater part of mankind to accomplish this work, and live according to their own approbation, as soon as they possibly can: but since the duration of life is so uncertain (and that has⁹ been a common topic of discourse ever since¹⁰ there was a thing as life itself), how¹¹ is it possible that we should¹² defer a moment the beginning to live according to the rules of reason?—STEELE, *The Spectator*.

¹ *Quit ne*, with the subjunctive, because *scarce* is considered as a negative. For *ne* see Ex. XXXVIII. Note ¹¹, Part I. ² *One time*

or other=*un jour ou l'autre*. ³ What they want=*ce qu'il leur faut*. I want money=*il me faut de l'argent*. What do you want? =*que vous faut-il?* ⁴ They cannot betake themselves to it=*ils ne peuvent pas s'y adonner*. ⁵ If a man should call for more lights=*si un homme demandait plus de lumière qu'il n'en a*. See Ex. XXI. Note ⁷, Part II. and Ex. IV. Note ¹², Part II. ⁶ To have a mind to=*avoir envie de*. ⁷ We cannot command ourselves enough to=*nous ne pouvons pas avoir assez d'empire sur nous-mêmes pour*. ⁸ Taking of leave=*adieux* (plural). ⁹ The verb to be put in the present, as the action expressed by it is still going on. ¹⁰ Ever since there was=*depuis qu'il y a*. See Note ⁹ above. ¹¹ How is it?=*comment cela se fait-il?* How is it that . . . =*comment se fait-il que . . .* How is it possible that . . . =*comment se peut-il faire que . . .* *Faire* in the above expression, is used impersonally. ¹² Should defer, to be put in the subjunctive mood after a verb used impersonally.

XXIX.—YOUNG MEN OF SPIRIT AND GAIETY.

Rasselas rose next day, and resolved to begin his experiments upon life. 'Youth,' cried he, 'is the time of gladness: I will join myself to the young men, whose only business is to gratify¹ their desires, and whose time is all spent in a succession of enjoyments.'

To such societies he was readily admitted, but a² few days brought him back, weary and disgusted. Their mirth was without images, their laughter without motive, their pleasures were gross, in which the mind had³ no part; their conduct was, at once,⁴ wild and mean; they laughed at⁵ order and at law; but the frown of power dejected, and the eye of wisdom abashed them.

The prince soon concluded, that he should never be happy in a course of life of which he was ashamed. He thought it⁶ unsuitable to a reasonable being to act without a plan, and to be sad or cheerful only by chance. 'Happiness,' said he, 'must be something⁷ solid and permanent, without fear and without uncertainty.'

But his young companions had gained⁸ so much of his regard, by their frankness and courtesy,⁹ that he could not leave them without warning and remonstrance.

'My friends,' said he, 'I have seriously considered our manners and our prospects, and find that we have mistaken¹⁰ our own interest. The first years of man must make provision for the last. He¹¹ that never thinks, never can be wise. Perpetual levity must end in ignorance; and intemperance, though it may fire the spirits for an hour, will make life short or miserable.

'Let us consider that youth is of no long duration, and that in maturer age, when the enchantments of fancy shall cease, and¹² phantoms of delight dance no more about us, we shall have no¹³ comforts but the esteem of wise men, and the means of doing¹⁴ good. Let us, therefore, stop, while to stop is in our power: let us live as men who are some time to grow¹⁵ old, and to whom it will be the most dreadful of all evils, not¹⁶ to count their past years but by follies, and¹⁷ to be reminded of their former luxuriance of health, only by the maladies which riot¹⁸ has produced.'

They stared¹⁹ a while in silence one upon another, and at last drove him away, by a general chorus of continued laughter.

The consciousness that his sentiments were just, and²⁰ his intention kind, was scarcely sufficient to support him against the horror of derision: but he recovered his tranquillity, and pursued his search.—JOHNSON.

¹ To gratify=satisfaire. ² A few days brought him back=il revint peu de jours après. ³ To have no part in=n'avoir aucune part à. ⁴ At once=à la fois, when it means at a time, at the same time. When it means immediately, translate the expression by à

l'instant, de suite, sur-le-champ. ⁵ To laugh at=*se rire or se moquer de.* ⁶ Turn, he thought that it was unsuitable. See Ex. XVI. Note ⁷, Part I. ⁷ See Ex. LIX. Note ², Part I. ⁸ Had gained so much of his regard=*avaient tellement gagné son affection.* ⁹ Courtesy=*amabilité, politesse, courtoisie.* ¹⁰ We have mistaken our interests=*nous n'avons pas compris nos intérêts.* ¹¹ He that=*celui qui.* The one who=*celui or celle qui.* ¹² See Ex. XVII. Note ⁵, Part I. ¹³ We shall have no comforts but=*nous n'aurons d'autre consolation que.* ¹⁴ To do good, in general, is *faire le bien.* But, in a particular case, it would be *faire du bien.* To do good to some one=*faire du bien à quelqu'un.* ¹⁵ To grow old=*vieillir, from vieill.* Some time=*un jour.* Verbs formed from nouns belong to the first conjugation; verbs formed from adjectives belong to the second. ¹⁶ Not to count their past years, but=*de ne compter leurs années passées que.* The words *an, matin, jour, and soir,* designate the subdivisions of time; the words *année, matinée, journée, and soirée,* refer to the duration of these subdivisions of time. I have come for the day=*je suis venu pour la journée.* I will spend the evening with you=*je passerai la soirée avec vous.* The whole year=*toute l'année or l'année tout entière.* I am thirty years old=*j'ai trente ans, not années;* I have of course been living the whole duration of each year. ¹⁷ And to be reminded of . . . only=*et de n'avoir comme souvenir de . . . que.* ¹⁸ Riot, in this case, is *orgies or excès,* both in the plural. ¹⁹ To stare one upon another=*ils se regardèrent les uns les autres.* Speaking of two persons only, I should have said: *ils se regardèrent l'un l'autre.* ²⁰ Turn, and that his intention was kind.

XXX.—DEATH OF WILLIAM THE THIRD.

The king meanwhile was sinking fast.¹ Almarle had arrived at Kensington from the Hague, exhausted by rapid travelling. His master kindly bade him go to rest for some hours, and then summoned him to make his report. That report was in all respects² satisfactory. The States General were in the best temper³; the troops, the provisions, and the magazines were in the best order. Everything was in readiness for an early campaign. William received the intelligence with the calmness of a man whose work was done. He was under no illusion as to his danger. 'I am⁴ fast drawing,' he said, 'to my end.' His end was worthy of his life. His intellect was not for a

moment clouded. His fortitude was the more⁵ admirable because he was not willing to die. He had very lately said to one of those whom he most loved: 'You know that I never feared death; there have been times when I should have wished it; but, now that this great new prospect is opening⁶ before me, I do wish to stay here a little longer.' Yet no weakness, no querulousness, disgraced the noble close of that noble career. To the physicians the king returned his thanks graciously and gently. 'I know that you have done all that⁷ skill and learning could⁸ do for me; but the case is beyond your art; and I submit.'⁹ From the words which escaped him he seemed to be frequently engaged in mental prayer. Burnet and Tenison remained many hours in the sick-room. He professed to them his firm belief in the truth of the Christian religion, and received the sacrament from their hands with great seriousness. The ante-chambers were crowded¹⁰ all night with lords and privy-councillors. He ordered¹¹ several of them to be called in, and exerted himself to take leave of them with a few kind and cheerful words. Among the English who were admitted to his bedside were Devonshire and Ormond. But there were in the crowd those who felt¹² as no Englishman could feel, friends of his youth who had been true to him, and to whom he had been true, through all vicissitudes of fortune; who had served him with unalterable fidelity when his Secretaries of State, his Treasury¹³ and his Admiralty¹⁴ had betrayed him; who had never on any field of battle, or in any atmosphere tainted with loathsome and deadly disease, shrunk from placing their own lives in jeopardy to save his, and whose truth he had at the cost¹⁵ of his own popularity rewarded with bounteous munificence. He strained his feeble

1

voice to thank Auverquerque for the affectionate and loyal services of thirty years. To Albemarle he gave the keys of his closet, and of his private drawers. 'You know,' he said, 'what to do¹⁶ with them.' By this time¹⁷ he could scarcely respire. 'Can this,' he said to the physicians, 'last long?' He was told that the end was approaching. He swallowed a cordial, and asked for Bentinck. Those were his last articulate words. Bentinck instantly came to the bedside, bent down, and placed his ear close to the king's mouth. The lips of the dying man moved: but nothing could be heard. The king took the hand of his earliest friend and pressed it tenderly to¹⁸ his heart. In that moment, no doubt, all that had cast¹⁹ a slight passing cloud over their long and pure friendship was forgotten. It was now¹⁷ between seven and eight in the morning. He closed his²⁰ eyes, and gasped²¹ for breath. The bishops knelt down and read the commendatory prayer. When it ended William was no more.—MACAULAY'S *England*.

¹ *The king meanwhile was sinking fast*=*cependant le roi baissait rapidement*. ² *Translate report by rapport*, and in all respects by à tous égards. ³ *In best temper*=*on ne peut mieux disposés*. ⁴ *To be fast drawing to*=*s'approcher rapidement de*. ⁵ *The more . . . because*=*d'autant plus . . . que*. ⁶ See Ex. XII. Note ⁵, Part III. ⁷ *All that*=*tout ce qui* (nom.), *tout ce que* (accus.). ⁸ See Ex. XXXIII. Note ³, Part I. ⁹ See Ex. XII. Note ⁵, Part III. ¹⁰ *Crowded with*=*encombré de, plein de*. ¹¹ *He ordered followed by the subjunctive*. See Ex. III. Note ¹, and Ex. VII. Note ⁴, Part I.—*Of them*=*en*, before the verb. ¹² *Who felt as no Englishman could feel*=*ceux qui ressentaient ce qu'aucun Anglais ne pouvait ressentir*. ¹³ Avoid taking a collective of this sort. Say, for instance, the chiefs or the lords of the Treasury. ¹⁴ See Note ¹³ above. ¹⁵ *Cost*=*prix*. ¹⁶ *To know what to do*=*savoir que faire*.—*With them*. Turn, of them. ¹⁷ *By this time*=*alors*. ¹⁸ *To his heart*=*contre son cœur*. ¹⁹ *All that had cast a slight passing cloud over their long and pure friendship was forgotten*=*tout ce qui avait pu troubler un moment la pureté d'une longue amitié fut oublié*. See Note ⁷ above. ²⁰ See Ex. XVI. Note ²⁰, Part III. ²¹ *To gasp for breath*=*faire des efforts pour respirer*.

XXXI.—DIFFERENT WAYS OF DISCUSSING.

I have sometimes amused myself with¹ considering the several² methods of managing a debate which have obtained³ in the world.

The first races of mankind used to dispute, as our ordinary people do⁴ nowadays, in a kind of wild logic, uncultivated by rules of art.

Socrates introduced a catechetical method of arguing. He would⁵ ask his adversary question upon question, till⁶ he had convinced him out of his own mouth that his opinions were wrong. This way of debating drives an enemy up⁷ into a corner, seizes all the passes through which he can make an escape, and forces him to surrender at discretion.

Aristotle changed this method of attack, and invented a great variety of little weapons, called syllogisms. As in the Socratic way of dispute you agree to everything which your opponent advances, in the Aristotelic you are still denying and contradicting some part or other of what he says. Socrates conquers you by stratagem, Aristotle by force: the one takes the town by sap, the other sword⁸ in hand.

The universities of Europe, for⁹ many years, carried on their debates by syllogism, insomuch¹⁰ that we see the knowledge of several centuries laid out¹¹ into objections and answers, and all the good sense of the age cut and minced into almost an infinitude of distinctions.

When our universities found that there was no end of wrangling this way,¹² they invented a kind of argument, which is not reducible to any mood or figure in Aristotle. It was called the *argumentum baculinum*, which is pretty well expressed in our English word *club-law*. When

they were not able to confute their antagonist, they knocked him down. It was their method in these polemical debates, first to discharge their syllogisms, and afterwards to betake themselves to their clubs, till such time as they had one way¹³ or other confounded their gainsayers. There is in Oxford a narrow defile (to make use of a military term) where the partizans used to encounter, for which reason it still retains the name of *Logic Lane*. I have heard an old gentleman, a physician, make his¹⁴ boasts, that when he was a young fellow he marched several times at the head of a troop of *Scotists*,¹⁵ and cudgelled a body of *Smiglesians*¹⁶ half the length of *High Street*, till they had dispersed themselves for shelter into their respective garrisons.

This humour, I find, went very far in¹⁶ Erasmus's time. For that author tells us, that upon the revival of Greek letters, most of¹⁷ the universities in Europe were divided into Greeks and Trojans. The latter were those who bore a mortal enmity to the language of the Grecians, insomuch that if they met with any who understood it, they did not fail to treat him as a foe. Erasmus himself had, it seems, the misfortune to fall into the hands of a party of Trojans, who laid on him with so many blows and buffets that he never forgot their hostilities to¹⁸ his dying day.—ADDISON, *Spectator*.

¹ *To amuse oneself with*=*s'amuser à*. ² *Différent*. ³ *To obtain* (neuter)=*exister*. ⁴ *Turn, do it*. ⁵ See Ex. XI. Note ⁶, Part II. and Ex. LXXVII. Note ⁶, Part I. ⁶ *Till he had convinced him out of his own mouth that his opinions were wrong*=*jusqu'à ce qu'il lui eût fait avouer de sa propre bouche que ses opinions étaient fausses*. ⁷ *Up into a corner*=*dans une impasse*. ⁸ See Ex. V. Note ⁵, Part I. ⁹ See Ex. VII. Note ³, Part II. ¹⁰ *Insomuch*=*tellement*, or *si bien*. ¹¹ *Laid out into*=*composé de*. ¹² *This way*, to be placed immediately after the verb. ¹³ *One way or other*=*d'une manière ou d'une autre*. ¹⁴ *To make one's boast*=*se vanter de*, with the following verb in the infinitive. ¹⁵ *Scotists* and *Smiglesians* were followers

of the scholastic philosopher *Scotus* and of the Polish Jesuit *Smiglecius*. In French *Scotiste* and *Smiglézien*. ¹⁶ In *Erasmus's time*=*du temps d'Érasme*. ¹⁷ *Most of*=*la plupart de*. ¹⁸ *To, meaning as far as, until*, is translated by *jusqu'à*.

XXXII.—WILL SUMMERS, THE KING'S FOOL.

Lean he was, hollow-eyed,¹ as all report,
 And stoop he did too, yet in all the court
 Few men were more beloved than was² this fool,
 Whose merry prate kept³ with the king much rule.
 When he was sad the king with him would⁴ rhyme,
 Thus Will exiled sadness many a time.⁵
 —He was a poor man's friend,
 And help'd the widow often in the end.
 The king would ever grant what he did crave,
 For well he knew Will no⁶ exacting knave;
 But wish'd⁷ the king to do good deeds great store,
 Which⁸ caused the court to love him more and more.⁹
 ARMIN'S *Nest of Ninnies*.

¹ *To be hollow-eyed*=*avoir les yeux creux*. ² See Ex. XXI. Note ¹², Part I., and Ex. IV. Note ¹³, Part II. ³ *Kept with the king much rule*=*avait beaucoup d'influence sur le roi*. ⁴ See Ex. XI. Note ⁶, Part II. ⁵ *Many a time*=*bien des fois*. ⁶ *Turn, for he knew well that Will was not an exacting knave*. ⁷ *Turn, he wished that the king, etc.* See Ex. VII. Note ⁴, Part I. ⁸ *Which* here refers to all that precedes, not to one particular noun; it is therefore *ce qui*. *Which caused the court to love him*=*ce qui fit que la cour l'aima*. ⁹ *More and more*=*de plus en plus*.

XXXIII.—THEORY AND PRACTICE.

James Granger, vicar, preached¹ a sermon, October 18th, 1779, in the parish church of Ship-lake, Oxfordshire, and published it under the title of an *Apology for the Brute Creation; or Abuse of Animals Considered*. Will it be believed that this very sensible discourse gave dis-

gust to two considerable congregations, and that the mention of dogs and horses was considered as a prostitution of the dignity of the pulpit? This made him publish it. He dedicated it to T. B. Drayman, and addressing him as Neighbour Tom, reminded him that he had seen him exercise the lash with greater rage, and heard him at the same time swear more roundly and forcibly, than ² he had ever seen or heard any of his brethren of the whip in London. Should he find any hard words in the discourse, he told him that if he could come to the vicarage, he would endeavour to explain them. And he warned him that if he did not alter his conduct, he would take care ³ to have him punished by a justice of peace.⁴—*Monthly Review*.

¹ Use the verb *faire*, to avoid a tautology. See Ex. XVII. Note ⁶, Part I. ² See Ex. IV. Note ¹³, Part II. ³ *He would take care to have him punished*=*il aurait soin de le faire punir*. ⁴ *Justice of peace*=*juge de paix*.

XXXIV.—TOBACCO.

SINGULAR TASTE OF AN ASS.

There is now in the possession of Mr. Walton, farmer, of Great Lever, near Bolton, a male ass, which is known¹ to be nearly fifty years of age. He is named 'Billy,' and prefers tobacco to any other luxury; he is likewise very fond of a pinch² of snuff. Our informant has within³ these few days seen Billy masticate a large quid of pig-tail with as much *goût* as any Jack Tar⁴ in his majesty's service. When he had finished the tobacco, a pinch of strong rappee was administered, which Billy snuffed⁵ without the least demur, and curling up his olfactory organ, delivered one of those charming solos so peculiar to his species. Billy is chiefly employed in⁶ carry-

ing milk from his master's farm to Bolton; and if Mr. Walton has any business to transact in the town, he can leave Billy with security at the door of any customer, whence he will not budge an inch⁷ until he hears his master's voice. Billy is invariably accompanied on⁸ his journeys to Bolton by a small cur dog, which is so attached to him that in the absence of Mr. Walton, he takes his station close to Billy, and will not suffer⁹ any stranger to come near him.—*Monthly Review*.

¹ Which is known to be nearly fifty years of age=*que l'on sait avoir près de cinquante ans*. ² A pinch of snuff=*une prise*. ³ Within these few days=*ces derniers jours*. ⁴ Jack Tar=*matelot, loup de mer*. ⁵ Snuffed=*aspirait, se fourrait dans les nez*. ⁶ à, with the infinitive. ⁷ Whence he will not budge an inch=*il n'en bougera pas d'un pouce*. ⁸ On his journeys=*dans ses voyages*. ⁹ Souffrir *que*, followed by the subjunctive.

XXXV.—EFFECTS OF MUSIC.

A woman, twenty-eight years of age,¹ of a robust constitution, attended a² ball which was given on³ the occasion of a rural *fête* in her native⁴ village. It so happened⁵ that she had never heard the music of an orchestra before; she was charmed with it, and danced for⁶ three days successively, during which the festivity lasted. But though the ball was at an end, the woman continued to hear the music; whether⁷ she ate, drank, walked, or went to bed, still was she haunted by the harmonies of the orchestra. She was sleepless, her digestive organs began to suffer, and ultimately her whole system was deranged. Various remedies were tried to drown the imaginary music, but the more⁸ her body became enfeebled the more intensely did the musical sounds disturb her mind. She sank at last, after six months' nervous suffering. It should be added,

that the leader of the band having occasionally indulged⁹ in a discordant *capriccio* for the amusement of his auditors, the notes which he played produced the most torturing effect when they recurred to the imagination of the patient: 'Those horrid sounds!' she would¹⁰ cry, as¹¹ she held her head between her hands. There is nothing so extraordinary in this case, as it regards the mere repetition of sounds in the *sensorium*, in consequence of a long-continued impression originally made, but that¹² it should be carried to the extent of causing a nervous affection, terminating fatally, is what seems to render the case unique.—*Medical Gazette*.

¹ *Agée de.* ² *Attended a ball=alla à un bal.* ³ *A l'occasion de.* ⁴ *Turn, in the village where she was born.* ⁵ *It so happened=il se trouva.* ⁶ See Ex. VII. Note ³, Part II. ⁷ *Whether . . . or=soit que . . . ou que*, with the subjunctive. ⁸ See Ex. XX. Note ⁸, Part III. ⁹ *To indulge in=se livrer à.* ¹⁰ See Ex. XI. Note ⁶, Part II. ¹¹ *As she held her head between her hands=en se tenant la tête entre les mains.* See Ex. LXXVIII. Note ⁷, Part I., and Ex. VI. Note ¹¹, Part II. ¹² *But that it should be carried to the extent of=mais que cela soit allé jusqu'à* (followed by the infinitive).

XXXVI.—A MAIDEN LADY'S WILL.

A maiden lady, aged fifty-seven, died at Horsham,—of¹ good property. For thirty years she had been a recluse. In 1790 she built² a neat and elegant house for herself, and furnished it, but never occupied it. She lived in a small apartment contiguous, from which there was a communication, and would³ often walk through the uninhabited rooms to inspect the furniture. It is said that she never saw the front of this house. She had all sorts of animals, and used to play a hand-organ to them,—dogs, cats, monkeys, guinea-pigs, hares, rabbits, squirrels,

peacocks, doves, parrots, etc., and she left fifteen pounds a⁴ year to a person to 'feed and take care of them for and during their natural lives.' By her will her body was to be kept one month, and longer unless⁵ there were symptoms of putrefaction. These, however, were so decided⁶ that between thirty and forty pounds were expended upon it⁷ in spirits of wine to keep it in preservation for the appointed⁸ term. By her express direction it was first inclosed in a shell, then in a leaden coffin, thirdly in a coffin of oak; and lastly, the whole was let down into a stone coffin of the best Portland stone: the mason, according to her will, being to choose either that material or black marble, which ever he believed to be most durable. Silvered breast-plate and ornaments were on the oaken coffin, and on the lid of the stone she appointed⁹ her name, age, and the day of her death to be cut in letters each three-quarters of an inch deep.¹⁰—SOUTHEY'S *Common-place Book*.

¹ *Of good property* = *laissant une fortune assez considérable*.

² *She built for herself* = *elle se fit bâtir*. The verb *faire* is used because she did not build the house, she made some one build it; she caused it to be built. ³ See Ex. XI. Note ⁶, Part II. ⁴ *A year* = *par an*. ⁵ See Ex. XXIV. Note ⁵, Part III. ⁶ *Decided* = *prononcés*. ⁷ Turn, upon the corpse; and see what is said in Ex. XXVIII. Note ¹⁰, Part I. ⁸ *Appointed term* = *temps voulu, terme fixé*. ⁹ *She appointed her name . . . to be cut . . .* = *elle désira . . . qu'on sculptât or gravât*. ¹⁰ *Three quarters of an inch deep* = *de trois quarts de ponce de profondeur*.

XXXVII.—PALEY AT CAMBRIDGE.

When Paley first¹ went to Cambridge, he fell into a society of young men far richer than himself, to whom his talents and conviviality made² him an acceptable companion, and he was³ in a fair way for ruin. One morning one

of these comrades came into his bedroom before he was up,⁴ and he, as usual, thought it was to propose some plan of pleasure for the day. His friend, however, said: 'Paley, I have⁵ not slept a wink this night for thinking of you. I am, as you know, heir to such a fortune that whether⁶ I ever look in a book at Cambridge or not, it does not signify a farthing. But this is not the case with you, you have only your abilities to look to,⁷ and no man has better,⁸ if you do⁹ but make a proper use of them. But if you go on this¹⁰ way you are ruined; and from this time forward¹¹ I am determined not to associate with you, for your own sake. You know I like your company, and it is a great sacrifice to give it up, but give it up I will, as a matter of conscience.' Paley lay in bed¹² the whole day,¹³ ruminating upon this.¹⁴ In the evening he rose and took his tea, ordered his bedmaker to make his fire and call him at five in the morning; and from that day forward¹⁵ rose always at that hour; went out first wrangler and became the fortunate man he was.—SOUTHEY'S *Common-place Book*.

¹ *First went*=*entra*. ² *To make*, before an adjective, meaning to render, is translated by *rendre*. ³ *And he was in a fair way for ruin*=*et il était sur la route qui mène à la ruine, et il était en train de se bien ruiner*. ⁴ *Before he was up*=*alors qu'il n'était pas encore levé*. ⁵ *I have not slept a wink this night*=*je n'ai pas fermé l'œil de la nuit*. ⁶ *Whether, si*, had better be translated by *que*. See Ex. XVII. Note ⁵, Part I. As *que*, replacing *si*, would come after *que, that*, it would be better to turn the sentence in the following manner: *Whether I ever look in a book at Cambridge or not, it does not signify a farthing, for I am, as you know, heir to an immense fortune*. ⁷ *To look to*=*avoir recours à, mettre son espoir dans*. ⁸ *No man has better*=*il n'est pas d'homme qui ait un plus bel avenir devant soi*. ⁹ *If you do but make*=*si seulement vous faites*. ¹⁰ *This way*=*ainsi*. ¹¹ *From this time forward*=*désormais, dorénavant*. ¹² *To lie in bed*=*rester au lit*. ¹³ See Ex. XXIX. Note ¹⁶, Part III. ¹⁴ *Upon this*=*là-dessus*. ¹⁵ *From that day forward*=*depuis ce jour-là*.

XXXVIII.—PROTESTANT CHURCH ESTABLISHED BY ELIZABETH.

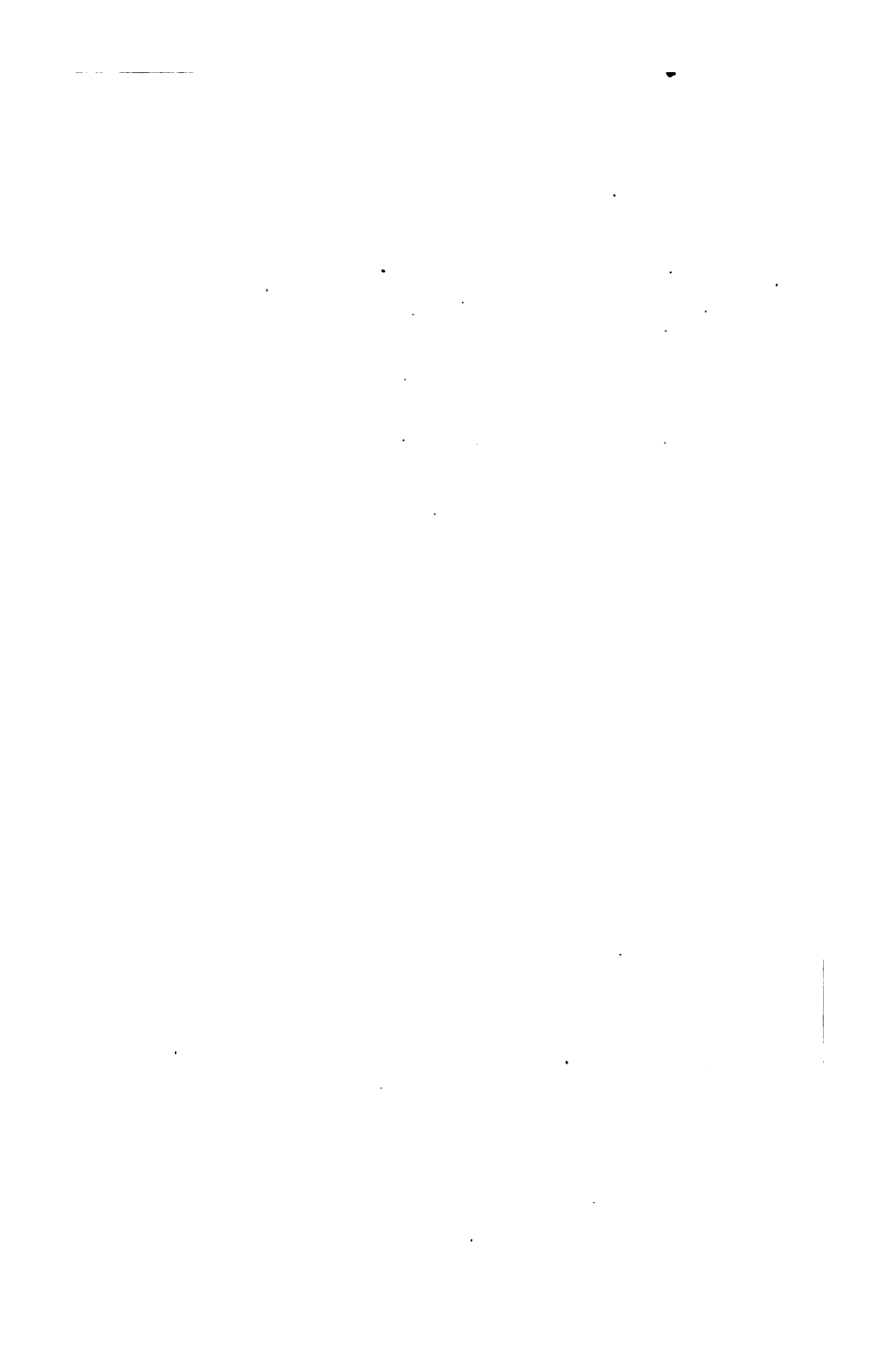
Henry VIII. had no sooner prevailed¹ on the Lords and Commons of England to renounce their spiritual obedience to the Roman² see, and to acknowledge his own supremacy, than, as a natural consequence, he proceeded to establish it in Ireland. In the former instance, many of his subjects, and even his clergy, were secretly attached to the principles of the Reformation; as many others were jealous of ecclesiastical wealth or eager to possess it. But in Ireland the reformers had made no progress; it had been among the effects of the pernicious separation of the two races, that the Irish priests had little intercourse with their bishops, who were nominated by the king, so that their synods are commonly recited to have been holden *inter Anglicos*; the bishops themselves were sometimes intruded by violence, more often dispossessed by it; a total ignorance and neglect prevailed in the Church; and it is even found impossible to recover the succession of names in some sees. In a nation so ill-predisposed, it was difficult to bring about³ a compliance with the king's demand of abjuring their religion; ignorant, but not indifferent, the clergy, with Cromer, the primate, at their head, and most of the Lords and Commons, in a parliament held at Dublin in 1536, resisted the act of supremacy; which was nevertheless ultimately carried by the force of government. Its enemies continued to withstand the new schemes of reformation, more especially in the next reign, when they went altogether to subvert the ancient faith. As it appeared dangerous to summon a parliament, the English liturgy was ordered by a royal proclamation;

but Dowdall, the new primate, as stubborn and adherent of the Romish Church as his predecessor, with most of the other bishops and clergy, refused obedience; and the Reformation was never legally established in the short reign of Edward. His eldest sister's accession reversed of course what had been done, and restored tranquillity in ecclesiastical matters; for the Protestants were too few⁴ to be worth persecution, nor⁵ were even those molested who fled to Ireland from the fires of Smithfield.

Another scene of revolution ensued in a very few years. Elizabeth, having fixed the Protestant Church on a stable basis in England, sent over the Earl of Sussex to hold an Irish parliament in 1560. The disposition of such an assembly might be presumed hostile to the projected re-formations; but, contrary to what had occurred on this side of the Channel, though the peers were almost uniformly for the old religion, a large majority of the bishops are said to have veered⁶ round with the times, and supported, at least by conformity and acquiescence, the creed of the English court. In the House of Commons, pains had been taken to secure a majority; ten only out of twenty counties, which had at that time been formed, received the writ of summons; and the number of seventy-six representatives of the Anglo-Irish people was made up by the towns, many of them under the influence of the crown, some perhaps containing a mixture of Protestant religion. The English laws of supremacy and uniformity were enacted in nearly the same words; and thus the common prayer was at once set up⁷ instead of the mass, but with a singular reservation, that in those parts of the country where the minister had no knowledge of

the English language, he might⁸ read the service in Latin. All subjects⁹ were bound to attend the public worship of the church, and every other was interdicted.—HALLAM.

¹ *To prevail on*=*décider, persuader.* ² *The Roman see*=*Le Saint-Siège.* ³ *It was difficult to bring about a compliance with the king's demands*=*il était difficile de l'amener à se conformer aux désirs du roi.* ⁴ *Too few*=*trop peu nombreux.* ⁵ See Ex. XIX. Note ³, Part III. ⁶ *To veer round with the times*=*changer d'opinion avec le temps.* After the majority of the bishops, put the verb in the singular; make it agree with majority, not with bishops. Rule.—When a collective is followed by *de* and a noun, the verb agrees with the word (the collective or the noun following) which attracts the attention most. Ex.: *la MOITIÉ des passagers n'AVAIT pas la force de s'inquiéter du danger* (Voltaire), but we should write, *un grand nombre d'OISEAUX FAISAIENT résonner ces bocages de leurs doux chants* (Fénelon). ⁷ *Set up*=*établi, substitué à.* If you use the latter expression, *à* translates *instead of.* ⁸ See Ex. XXXIII. Note ³, Part I. ⁹ *All subjects*=*tous les sujets du royaume.*



ENGLISH-FRENCH VOCABULARY

ENGLISH-FRENCH VOCABULARY

A

a, **an** (indef. art.), un, une
abate, *to* (trans. verb), abattre, diminuer
ability (subs.), habileté (fem.)
able, *to be*, pouvoir (irr. verb)
abominable (adj.), abominable
about (prep.), environ, au sujet de, touchant; *to be*—, faire; *to be*—*to*, aller, être sur le point de
above (prep.), au-dessus de;— (adv.), au-dessus
accept, *to* (trans. verb), accepter
accident (subs.), accident (mas.)
accordingly (adv.), en conséquence
account (subs.), récit (mas.); *on*—*of*, à cause de
acknowledge, *to* (trans. verb), reconnaître (irr. verb)
act (subs.), acte (mas.), action (fem.); *of a play*, acte (mas.)
act, *to* (trans. verb), jouer
actor (subs.), acteur (mas.)
actress (subs.), actrice (fem.)
add, *to* (trans. verb), ajouter
address, *to* (trans. verb), parler à, s'adresser à
adjuration (subs.), adjuration (fem.)

administrate, *to* (trans. verb), administrer
admire, *to* (trans. verb), admirer
admit, *to* (trans. verb), admettre (irr. verb)
adopt, *to* (trans. verb), adopter
advantage (subs.), avantage (mas.); *to take*—*of*, profiter de
affair (subs.), affaire (fem.)
affinity (subs.), affinité (fem.)
afraid, *to be*, avoir peur
African (adj.), africain
after (prep.), après;— (conj.), après que (followed by the indicative)
afterwards (adv.), ensuite, après
against (prep.), contre
age (subs.), âge, (mas.)
ago (adv.), il y a
agree, *to* (intrans. verb), convenir (irr. verb)
air (subs.), air (mas.)
akin to, parent de, ayant du rapport avec
alas (interj.), hélas
alchemy (subs.), alchimie (fem.)
alcoholic (adj.) alcoolique
ale (subs.), bière (fem.)
all (adj.), tout; (plur.) tous, toutes

alliance (subs.), parents (fem.); <i>the honour of your</i> —, l'honneur d'être un de vos parents	any (adj.), (affirm. sentence) tout; — (negat. sentence) pas de, aucun
allow, to (trans. verb), reconnaître (irr. verb), avouer	apartment (subs.), appartement (mas.)
ally, to (trans. verb), allier; <i>to be closely allied</i> , être proches parents	apparent (adj.), apparent
almost (adv.), presque	appeal (subs.), appel (mas.)
alone (adj.), seul; — (adv.), seulement	appear, to (intrans. verb), sembler, paraître (irr. verb)
already (adv.), déjà	appearance (subs.), apparition (fem.), apparence (fem.)
also (adv.), aussi	appease, to (trans. verb), apaiser
altar (subs.), autel (mas.)	appetite (subs.), appétit (mas.)
although (conj.), quoique, bien que (followed by the subjunctive)	apple (subs.), pomme (fem.)
always (adv.), toujours	apply, to (trans. verb), appliquer
amazement (subs.), étonnement (mas.)	appointed (past part.), nommé, fixé; <i>he was — to lead</i> , qu'il était appelé à commander
ambassador (subs.), ambassadeur (mas.)	appreciate, to (trans. verb), apprécier
ambition (subs.), ambition (fem.)	approach, to (intrans. verb.), s'approcher (de)
among (prep.), parmi	appropriate, to (trans. verb), approprier, appliquer
ample (adj.), large	archbishop (subs.), archevêque (mas.)
Amsterdam, Amsterdam	arduous (adj.), difficile, pénible
amusement (subs.), amusement (mas.)	argumentative (adj.), qui se plaît à argumenter
amusing (adj.), amusant	aright (adv.), bien
ancient (adj.), vieux, ancien	arm (subs.), bras (mas.)
and (conj.), et	army (subs.), armée (fem.)
anecdote (subs.), anecdote (fem.)	article (subs.), article (mas.)
angry (adj.), fâché	artist (subs.), artiste
announce, to (trans. verb), annoncer	as (conj.), comme; <i>as . . . as</i> , aussi . . . que
annoy, to (trans. verb), ennuyer	ashamed (adj.), honteux
anon (adv.), à l'instant	ask, to (trans. verb), demander
another (adj.), un autre	aspect, aspect (mas.), apparence (fem.)
answer, to (trans. verb), répondre à	asquint, to be , regarder de côté
antiquity (subs.), antiquité (fem.)	

assemble, to (trans. verb), assembler; — (intrans. verb), s'assembler
assistance (subs.), assistance (fem.)
associate, to (trans. verb), associer
assume, to (trans. verb), prendre (irr. verb)
assure, to (trans. verb), assurer
astonish, to (trans. verb), étonner
astonishment (subs.), étonnement (mas.)
at (prep.), à
attach, to (trans. verb), attacher
attack, to (trans. verb), attaquer
attempt (trans. verb), essayer
audience (subs.), auditoire (mas.)
Auld Reekie, Édimbourg
austere (adj.), austère
author (subs.), auteur (mas.)
autumn (subs.), automne (mas.)
avail oneself of, to, profiter de
avoid, to (trans. verb), éviter
awake, to (trans. verb), éveiller; — (intrans. verb), s'éveiller
aware, to be, savoir (irr. verb)
awful (adj.), horrible, énorme

B

back (subs.), fond (mas.)
bacon (subs.), lard (mas.)
bad (adj.), mauvais
badly (adv.), mal
balance (subs.), balance (fem.)
bandy, to (trans. verb), renvoyer

banker (subs.), banquier (mas.)
banneret (subs.), banneret (mas.)
barber (subs.), barbier (mas.)
bard (subs.), barde (mas.)
base (adj.), vil, bas
battle (subs.), bataille (fem.)
bawbee (subs.), liard (mas.), sou (mas.)
bay (subs.), baie (fem.)
be, to, être
beak (subs.), bec (mas.)
bear, to (trans. verb), porter, supporter
beard (subs.), barbe (fem.); — **to** (trans. verb), raser, faire la barbe à
beat, to (trans. verb), battre
beautiful (adj.), beau, belle
because (conj.), parce que
become, to (intrans. verb), devenir (irr. verb)
bed (subs.), lit (mas.)
bedside (subs.), chevet (mas.)
bedtime (subs.), l'heure de se coucher
before (prep.), avant (*time*, *order*), devant (*place*); — (conj.), avant que (with the subjunctive); — (adv.), auparavant
beg, to (trans. verb), prier, demander; **to solicit alms**, mendier
begin, to (trans. verb), commencer
behind (prep. and adv.), derrière
believe, to (trans. verb), croire (irr. verb)
belong, to (intrans. verb), appartenir (irr. verb); être
beloved (past part.), aimé, chéri

bench (subs.), cour (fem.)
beneath (prep.), sous, au-dessous de; — (adv.), au-dessous
beseech, *to* (trans. verb), supplier; *I — you*, je vous en supplie
best (adj.), le meilleur; — (adv.), le mieux
bestow, *to* (trans. verb), donner, accorder
better (adj.), meilleur; — (adv.), mieux
between (prep.), entre
beyond (prep.), au-delà de, au-dessus de
biography (subs.), biographie (fem.)
bird (subs.), oiseau (mas.)
Birmingham, Birmingham
birth (subs.), naissance (fem.)
birthday (subs.), fête (fem.)
bitter (adj.), amer, acharné
bless, *to* (trans. verb), bénir
blind (adj.), aveugle
blockhead (subs.), lourdaud (mas.), buse (fem.)
bloody (adj.), sanglant
blow (subs.), coup (mas.)
blurt out, *to* (trans. verb), laisser échapper
board (subs.), bord (mas.); *on —*, à bord
body (subs.), corps (mas.)
book (subs.), livre (mas.)
bookseller (subs.), libraire (mas.)
boot (subs.), botte (fem.)
borrow, *to* (trans. verb), emprunter
borrower (subs.), emprunteur
both (adj.), les deux, tous les deux; *both gentlemen*, ces deux messieurs
bottle (subs.), bouteille (fem.)

bottom (subs.), fond (mas.)
box (subs.), boîte (fem.); *in a restaurant*, cabinet (mas.); *in a theatre*, loge (fem.); *letter —*, boîte aux lettres
bracken (subs.), fougère (fem.)
bread (subs.), pain (mas.)
break, *to* (trans. verb), abattre
breast (subs.), poitrine (fem.)
brightness (subs.), éclat (mas.)
bring, *to* (trans. verb), apporter, amener; *to — back*, rapporter, ramener
broom (subs.), balai (mas.)
brother (subs.), frère (mas.)
brow (subs.), regard (mas.), sourcil (mas.)
brush (subs.), brosse (fem.); *tooth —*, brosse à dents
build, *to* (trans. verb), bâtir
burgomaster (subs.), bourgmestre (mas.)
Burgundian (adj.), bourguignon
burial (subs.), sépulture (fem.); *to receive Christian —*, être mis en terre sainte
burn, *to* (trans. verb), brûler
busy (adj.), occupé, actif
but (conj.), mais, seulement, ne . . . que
buy, *to* (trans. verb), acheter
by (prep.), par, de

C

cabin (subs.), cabine (fem.)
call, *to* (trans. verb), appeler; *to — on*, se présenter chez; *to be called*, s'appeler
canal (subs.), canal (mas.)
candle (subs.), chandelle (fem.)
capacity (subs.), capacité (fem.)
capital (adj.), excellent

captain (subs.), capitaine (mas.)	city (subs.), cité (fem.), ville (fem.)
care (subs.), soin (mas.); —s, soucis (mas.)	city-officer (subs.), fonctionnaire civil
career (subs.), carrière (fem.)	civil (adj.), civil
carpenter (subs.), charpentier (mas.)	claim, to (trans. verb), demander, réclamer
carry, to (trans. verb), porter; <i>to — away</i> , emporter.	clamorous (adj.), bruyant
case (subs.), cas (mas.), cause (fem.)	clear (adj.), clair, limpide; <i>to — up</i> (weather), s'éclaircir
caution (subs.), avis (mas.)	clergyman (subs.), ministre, pasteur (mas.)
cavalier (subs.), cavalier (mas.)	clerical (adj.), clérical
cavalry (subs.), cavalerie (fem.), soldats, troupes de cavalerie	clerk (subs.), commis (mas.), clerc (mas.)
celebrated (adj.), célèbre, fameux	client (subs.), client (mas.)
century (subs.), siècle (mas.)	cloak (subs.), manteau (mas.)
certain (adj.), certain	close (prep.), tout près de; — (subs.), fin (fem.)
chance (subs.), hasard (mas.)	closely (adv.), de près. See <i>ally</i>
change, to (trans. verb), changer (de); — (subs.), changement	clothe, to (trans. verb), vêtir (irr. verb)
chapel (subs.), chapelle (fem.)	clouded (past part.), obscurci
characteristic (subs.), trait caractéristique; — (adj.), caractéristique	coffee-house (subs.), café (mas.), restaurant (mas.)
charge, to (trans. verb), prendre (irr. verb)	coin (subs.), pièce de monnaie (fem.)
cheap (adj.), bon marché	cold (subs.), froid (mas.); — (adj.), froid
cheaper , meilleur marché	come, to (intrans. verb), venir (irr. verb); <i>to — in</i> , entrer
cheek (subs.), joue (fem.)	comedy (subs.), comédie (fem.)
chest (subs.), coffre (mas.)	comfort (subs.), bien-être (mas.)
chief (subs.), chef (mas.); — (adj.), principal	command, to (trans. verb), commander
chiefly (adv.) surtout	commander , commandant, chef, général, capitaine
chieftain (subs.), chef (mas.)	commensurate (adj.), proportionné
chimney (subs.), cheminée (fem.)	commit, to (trans. verb), commettre (irr. verb)
China , Chine (fem.)	common (subs.), plaine (fem.); — (adj.), commun
choose, to (trans. verb), choisir	
Christian (adj.), chrétien	
church (subs.), église (fem.)	
citizen (subs.), citoyen (mas.)	

Commons (<i>House of</i>), <i>Chambre des Communes</i> (fem.)	consume , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), consumer, consommer
compact (subs.), <i>pacte</i> (mas.); <i>family</i> —, <i>lien de famille</i> (mas.)	contact (subs.), <i>contact</i> (mas.)
companion (subs.), <i>compagnon</i> (mas.), <i>compagne</i> (fem.)	contempt (subs.), <i>mépris</i> (mas.)
company (subs.), <i>compagnie</i> (fem.)	content , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), <i>satisfaire</i> (irr. verb), <i>contenter</i>
complain , <i>to</i> (intrans. verb), <i>se plaindre</i> (irr. verb)	continually (adv.), <i>continuellement</i>
complaint (subs.), <i>mal</i> (mas.), <i>indisposition</i> (fem.)	conversation (subs.), <i>conversation</i> (fem.)
completely (adv.), <i>complètement</i>	convince , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), <i>convaincre</i> (irr. verb)
compliment (subs.), <i>compliment</i> (mas.)	coolness (subs.), <i>froideur</i> (fem.)
concert (subs.), <i>concert</i> (mas.)	corn (subs.), <i>blé</i> (mas.)
conclude , <i>to</i> (intrans. verb), <i>conclure</i> (irr. verb)	corner (subs.), <i>coin</i> (mas.)
condemn , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), <i>condamner</i>	corpse (subs.), <i>corps</i> (mas.), <i>cadavre</i> (mas.)
condition (subs.), <i>condition</i> (fem.)	corpulency (subs.), <i>corpulence</i> (fem.)
conduct , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), <i>conduire</i> (irr. verb)	correct , <i>to</i> , (trans. verb), <i>corriger</i>
confessor (subs.), <i>confesseur</i> (mas.)	correspondent (subs.), <i>correspondant</i> (mas.)
confidence (subs.) <i>confiance</i> (fem.), <i>confidence</i> (fem.)	corrupt , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), <i>corrompre</i>
conflagration (subs.), <i>incendie</i> (mas.)	council (subs.), <i>conseil</i> (mas.), <i>membres du conseil</i>
confusion (subs.), <i>confusion</i> (fem.)	counsel (subs.), <i>avocat</i> (mas.)
consanguinity (subs.), <i>parenté</i> (fem.)	counsellor (subs.), <i>conseiller</i> (mas.)
consider , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), <i>considérer</i> , <i>songer à</i>	count (subs.), <i>comte</i> (mas.)
considerable (adj.), <i>considérable</i>	countess (subs.), <i>comtesse</i> (fem.)
constantly (adv.), <i>constamment</i>	country (subs.), <i>pays</i> (mas.), <i>campagne</i> (fem.), <i>province</i> (fem.)
consternation (subs.), <i>consternation</i> (fem.)	country-house , <i>maison de campagne</i>
	courage (subs.), <i>courage</i> (mas.)
	court (subs.), <i>cour</i> (fem.)
	cover , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), <i>couvrir</i> (irr. verb)
	creature (subs.), <i>créature</i> (fem.)

creditor (subs.), créancier (mas.)
crime (subs.), crime (mas.)
criminal (adj.), criminel
crowd, *to* (intrans. verb), se presser en foule
crown (subs.), couronne (fem.); *to succeed to a —*, monter sur le trône
cultivation (subs.), culture (fem.)
cunning (subs.), finesse (fem.)
cup (subs.), coupe (fem.), tasse (fem.)
curious (adj.), curieux
curse (subs.), malédiction (fem.); —, *to* (trans. verb), maudire (irr. verb)
curtain (subs.), rideau (mas.), toile (fem.)
curtsey (subs.), révérence (fem.)
curve, *to* (trans. verb), courber
cushion (subs.), coussin (mas.)
cut, *to* (trans. verb), couper; *they are cutting out the third act*, ils sont en train de couper le troisième acte. *Être en train de* expresses *to be in the act of doing*

D

daily (adv.), journellement, tous les jours
danger (subs.), danger (mas.)
dangerous (adj.), dangereux
dark (subs.), obscurité (fem.)
day (subs.), jour (mas.), journée (fem.); *in their —*, de leur temps
dear (adj.), cher
death (subs.), mort (fem.)
debate (subs.), débat (mas.), discussion (fem.)

debt (subs.), dette (fem.); *to be in — for*, devoir
deceive, *to* (trans. verb), tromper
declare, *to* (trans. verb), déclarer
deeply (adv.), profondément
defence (subs.), protection (fem.), défense (fem.)
definition (subs.), définition (fem.)
degree (subs.), degré (mas.)
delay (subs.), retard (mas.)
delight, *to* (trans. verb), charmer
deliver, *to* (trans. verb), délivrer, livrer (*to give up*)
demand, *to* (trans. verb), demander, exiger
dentist (subs.), dentiste (mas.)
depend on, *to* (trans. verb), compter sur, dépendre de
deserve, *to* (trans. verb), mériter
design (subs.), dessein (mas.)
desire, *to* (trans. verb), désirer
desist, *to* (intrans. verb), cesser, se désister
destination (subs.), destination (fem.)
destine, *to* (trans. verb), destiner
destiny (subs.), destin (mas.), destinée (fem.)
destitute (adj.), privé, dénué, dépourvu
determine, *to* (trans. verb), décider; — (intrans. verb), se décider
detestation (subs.), exécution (fem.), horreur (fem.)
develop, *to* (trans. verb), développer
devote, *to* (trans. verb), dévouer

devotion (subs.), dévotion (fem.)	do, to (trans. verb), faire (irr. verb). Not to be translated when used in an interrogative or a negative sentence
difference (subs.), différence (fem.)	doctor (subs.), docteur (mas.)
difficult (adj.), difficile	doctrine (subs.), doctrine (fem.), théorie (fem.)
dig, to (trans. verb), creuser	domestic (adj.), domestique
dignity (subs.), dignité (fem.)	door (subs.), porte (fem.)
dinner (subs.), dîner (mas.)	doubting (pres. part.), exprimant ses doutes
directly (adv.), à l'instant, tout de suite	dozen (subs.), douzaine (fem.)
disappear (intrans. verb), disparaître (irr. verb)	drawer (subs.), tiroir (mas.)
disappoint, to (trans. verb), déappointer	dreadful (adj.), terrible
disaster (subs.), désastre (mas.)	drink, to (trans. verb), boire (irr. verb)
discountess (subs.), escomtesse (fem.). This word is not French. Use it, however, to keep the joke.	driver (subs.), cocher (mas.), conducteur (mas.)
discover, to (trans. verb), découvrir (irr. verb)	drowned, to be or to get, se noyer
discuss, to (trans. verb), discuter	drubbing (subs.), volée de coups de bâton (fem.)
disease (subs.), maladie (fem.)	Dublin (subs.), Dublin
dishonourable (adj.), déshonorable	duke (subs.), duc (mas.)
displease, to (trans. verb), déplaire à (irr. verb)	during (prep.), pendant
displeasure (subs.), déplaisir (mas.), mécontentement (mas.)	
dissatisfied (adj.), mécontent	
dissenting (adj.), de l'église dissidente	
dissimulation (subs.), dissimulation (fem.)	
distance (subs.), distance (fem.)	
distant (adj.), éloigné	
distinction (subs.), distinction (fem.)	
distinctly (adv.), distinctement	
disturber (subs.), celui qui trouble	

E

each (adj.), chaque, chacun ; — <i>other</i> , l'un l'autre
eagle (subs.), aigle (mas.)
east (subs.), est (mas.)
easy (adj.), facile
eat, to (trans. verb), manger
editor (subs.), rédacteur en chef
effect (subs.), effet (mas.)
effusiveness (subs.), effusion (fem.), épanchement (mas.)
eighty (adj.), quatre-vingts
elderly (adj.), âgé, d'un certain âge
elector (subs.), électeur (mas.)
elegant (adj.), élégant
eleven (adj.), onze

elixir (subs.), élixir (mas.)	equally (adv.), également
elsewhere (adv.), ailleurs	error (subs.), erreur (fem.)
embrace (subs.), baiser (mas.)	escape (subs.), subterfuge
embroider, to (trans. verb), broder	(mas.); —, <i>to</i> (intrans. verb), s'échapper
emergency (subs.), circon- stance critique, grave (fem.)	essential (adj.), essentiel, in- téressant
emotion (subs.), émotion (fem.)	establishment (subs.), éta- blissement (mas.)
emperor (subs.), empereur (mas.)	estimate, to (trans. verb), estimer
empress (subs.), impératrice (fem.)	even (adv.), même
enact, to (trans. verb), jouer le rôle de	evening (subs.), soir (mas.), soirée (fem.)
end (subs.), fin (fem.)	event (subs.), événement (mas.)
enemy (subs.), ennemi (mas.)	ever (adv.), jamais, toujours
engaged in (past part.), oc- cupé à	every (adj.), chaque, tous les, toutes les
engagement (subs.), engage- ment (mas.)	everybody , tout le monde
England (subs.), Angleterre (fem.)	evidence (subs.), évidence (fem.); (jur.) déposition (fem.)
English (adj.), anglais; noun meaning 'the English lan- guage', l'anglais (mas.)	evident (adj.), évident
enjoin, to (trans. verb), en- joindre (irr. verb)	exact (adj.), exact
enjoy, to (trans. verb), jouir de	exactly (adv.), exactement, précisément
enmity (subs.), inimitié (fem.)	examination (subs.), examen (mas.)
enormous (adj.), énorme	except (prep.) excepté
enough (adv.), assez	excite, to (trans. verb), exciter
enter, to (intrans. verb), entrer (dans)	exclaim, to (intrans. verb), s'écrier
enterprise (subs.), entreprise (fem.)	excuse, to (trans. verb), ex- cuser
enterprising (adv.), entrepre- nant	execration (subs.), horreur (fem.)
entertaining (adj.), intéres- sant	exert, to (trans. verb), dé- ployer
enthusiastic (adj.), enthousi- aste	exhaust, to (trans. verb), épuiser
entirely (adv.), entièrement	expect, to (trans. verb), s'at- tendre à, espérer
epitaph (subs.), épitaphe (fem.)	experienced (adj.), expéri- menté

explain, *to* (trans. verb), expliquer
expose, *to* (trans. verb), exposer
express, *to* (trans. verb), exprimer
expression (subs.), expression (fem.)
external (adj.), extérieur
extraordinary (adj.), extraordinaire
extravagance (subs.), extravagance (fem.)
extremely (adv.), extrêmement
extricate oneself, *to* (ref. verb), se tirer d'affaire, se tirer d'embarras
eye (subs.), œil (mas.), yeux (plur.)

F

face (subs.), figure (fem.), visage (mas.)
fact (subs.), fait (mas.)
faculty (subs.), faculté (fem.)
fail to, *to* (intrans. verb), manquer de
fair (adj.), beau, (fem.) belle
fairly (adv.), justement
faithful (adj.), fidèle
fall, *to* (intrans. verb), tomber (used with être)
falsely (adv.), faussement
family (subs.), famille (fem.)
famous (adj.), fameux
far (adv.), loin
farmer (subs.), fermier (mas.)
fashionable (adj.), à la mode
fast (adv.), vite
father (subs.), père (mas.)
fatigue (subs.), fatigue (fem.)
favour (subs.), faveur (fem.)
favourite (subs. and adj.), favori, (fem.) favorite

fear (subs.), crainte (fem.), peur (fem.); —, *to* (trans. verb), craindre (irr. verb)
feature (subs.), trait (mas.)
feeble (adj.), faible
feel, *to* (trans. verb), sentir (irr. verb); (intrans. verb), se sentir
feeling (subs.), sentiment (mas.)
felicity (subs.), choix heureux (mas.)
fellow (subs.), individu (mas.)
fertility (subs.), fécondité (fem.); fertilité (fem.)
festival (subs.), festin (mas.)
few (adj.), peu de; a —, quelques
field (subs.), champ (mas.); champ de bataille
fifteen (adj.), quinze
fifteenth (adj.), quinzième
fifty (adj.), cinquante
fight (subs.), combat (mas.); —, *to* (intrans. verb), se battre (trans. verb); *to* — a battle, livrer bataille
figure (subs.), tournure (fem.), taille (fem.), figure (fem.)
fill, *to* (trans. verb) remplir
financier (subs.), financier (mas.)
find, *to* (trans. verb) trouver
finish, *to* (trans. verb), finir, terminer
finished (past part.), achevé, accompli
fire (subs.), feu (mas.), incendie (mas.)
firm (adj.), ferme
first (adv.), d'abord; — (adj.), premier
fish (subs.), poisson (mas.)
fisherman (subs.), pêcheur (mas.)

five (adj.), cinq
flatterer (subs.), flatteur (mas.)
Fleming (subs.), Flamand (mas.); *we Flemings*, Nous autres Flamands
Flemish (adj.), flamand; — *history*, histoire de Flandres
float, to (intrans. verb), flotter
flourish, to (intrans. verb) fleurir
fly, to (intrans. verb) voler
foe (subs.), ennemi (mas.)
fold, to (trans. verb), plier
follow, to (trans. verb), suivre (irr. verb)
fond of, to be, aimer
fool (subs.), fou, folle; sot, sotté
for (prep.), pour; — (conj.), car
force, to (trans. verb), forcer
forehead (subs.), front (mas.)
foreign (adj.), étranger
forget, to (trans. verb), oublier
forgetfulness (subs.), oubli (mas.); négligence (fem.)
forgive, to (trans. verb), pardonner
forgiveness (subs.), pardon (mas.)
form (subs.), forme (fem.); *poetic* —, poésie (fem.), vers (mas.)
former (adj.), premier; *the* — celui-là
formidable (adj.), formidable
fortitude (subs.), force d'âme (fem.)
fortune (subs.), fortune (fem.)
four (adj.), quatre
frame (subs.), corps (mas.)
free (adj.), libre
French (adj.), français; — *king*, roi de France

French (noun meaning 'the French language'), le français (mas.)
Frenchman (subs.), Français (mas.)
frequent, to (trans. verb), fréquenter
friend (subs.), ami (mas.)
friendship (subs.), amitié (fem.)
frigate (subs.), frégate (fem.)
frivolous (adj.), frivole
from (prep.), de
front (subs.), devant (mas.); *in* —, sur le devant
frosty (adj.), glacial, glacé
frown (subs.), froncement des sourcils (mas.); *with a* —, en fronçant le sourcil
full (adj.), plein
fully, complètement
fulvous (adj.), jaune fauve
funeral (subs.), enterrement (mas.)
fur (subs.), fourrure (fem.)
furnish, to (trans. verb), pourvoir (irr. verb)
furrow, to (trans. verb), sillonner de rides, rider

G

gable (subs.), pignon (mas.)
gain, to (trans. verb), gagner
gate (subs.), porte (fem.)
general (subs.), général (mas.); — (adj.), général
generosity (subs.), générosité (fem.)
gentle (adj.), aimable, gracieux
gentleman (subs.), monsieur; (plur.), messieurs
Germany (subs.), Allemagne (fem.)

get out , <i>to</i> (intrans. verb), sortir (irr. verb)	hairstresser (subs.), coiffeur (mas.)
Ghent (subs.), Gand	half (subs.), moitié (fem.); — (adj.), demi; — (adv.), à moitié
giggle , <i>to</i> (intrans. verb), ri- caner	hand (subs.), main (fem.); —, <i>to</i> (trans. verb), donner; présenter
gin (subs.), genièvre (mas.); (keep gin in the 50th piece)	handsome (adj.), beau, belle
girl (subs.), fille (fem.)	hang , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), pendre; <i>to</i> — <i>up</i> (trans. verb), sus- pendre
give , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), donner	happen , <i>to</i> (intrans. verb), arriver
glad (adj.), heureux	happily (adv.), heureusement
Glasgow (subs.), Glasgow	happy (adj.), heureux
glass (subs.), verre (mas.)	harm (subs.), mal (mas.); <i>no</i> — <i>done</i> , aucun mal de fait
glide about , <i>to</i> (intrans. verb), passer rapidement	harmony (subs.), harmonie (fem.)
go , <i>to</i> (intrans. verb), aller (irr. verb); <i>to</i> — <i>in</i> , <i>into</i> , en- trer dans	hastily (adv.), précipitamment
gold (subs.), or (mas.)	have , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), avoir, <i>to</i> — <i>just</i> , venir de (irr. verb)
golden (adj.), d'or	head (subs.), tête (fem.)
good (adj.), bon, bonne	health (subs.), santé (fem.)
goose (subs.), oie (fem.)	healthy (adj.), sain
government (subs.), gouverne- ment (mas.)	hear , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), entendre
grace (subs.), grâce (fem.)	hearse (subs.), corbillard (mas.)
gracious (adj.), gracieux; <i>good</i> —, sapristi	heart (subs.), cœur (mas.)
grave (subs.), fosse (fem.)	heat (subs.), chaleur (fem.)
gravity (subs.), gravité (fem.), sérieux (mas.)	heaven (subs.), ciel; (plur.), cieux
great (adj.), grand	heavy (adj.), lourd
greatness (subs.), grandeur (fem.)	help , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), aider; <i>to</i> — <i>oneself to</i> , se servir
green (adj.), vert	her (poss. adj.), son, sa, ses (agrees with the following noun); — (pers. pron.), la (conjunctively); elle (dis- junctively)
grieve , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), affliger	here (adv.), ici
grimace (subs.), grimace (fem.)	high (adj.), haut
ground (subs.), terre (fem.), terrain (mas.)	him (pers. pron.), le (conjunc- tively); lui (disjunctively)
guest (subs.), hôte (mas.)	hire , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), louer

H

habit (subs.), habitude (fem.); <i>to be in the — of</i> , avoir l'habitude de	
---	--

his (poss. adj.), son, sa, ses (agrees with the following noun); — (poss. pron.), le sien, la sienne, les siens, les siennes (agrees with the noun it stands for)
hiss, *to* (trans. verb), siffler
history (subs.), histoire (fem.)
hit, *to* (trans. verb), heurter
hog (subs.), porc (mas.)
hold, *to* (trans. verb), tenir (irr. verb), occuper; *to—out* (trans. verb), offrir (irr. verb)
hole (subs.), trou (mas.)
homage (subs.), hommage (mas.); *to pay* —, rendre hommage
home (subs.), maison (fem.), habitation (fem.)
honour (subs.), honneur (mas.); —, *to* (trans. verb), honorer
honourable (adj.), honorable
hope, *to* (intrans. verb), espérer (referring to future time), aimer à croire, à penser (referring to present or past time)
hopefully (adv.), avec espoir
horseman (subs.), cavalier (mas.)
host (subs.), hôte (mas.)
hotel (subs.), hôtel (mas.)
hour (subs.), heure (fem.)
house (subs.), maison (fem.)
housemaid (subs.), servante (fem.)
housewife (subs.), ménagère (fem.)
how (adv.), comment
however (adv.), cependant
humble (adj.), humble
humbly (adv.), humblement
humour (subs.), esprit (mas.), galeté (fem.)

humoured (*good*) (adj.), de bonne humeur
hundred (adj.), cent
hydrogin (keep the same word in the 50th exercise)
hypocrite (subs.), hypocrite (mas.)

I

I (pers. pron.), je (conjunctively); moi (disjunctively)
iced (adj.), glacial
idiot (subs.), idiot (mas.)
idle (adj.), paresseux, oisif; *of — credulity*, de pure imagination
ignorant (adj.), ignorant
ill (adj.), malade
imitation (subs.), imitation (fem.)
immediately (adv.), immédiatement, à l'instant, sur-le-champ
immense (adj.), énorme, immense
immortal (adj.), immortel
immortality (subs.), immortalité (fem.)
impertinent (adj.), impertinent
importance (subs.), importance (fem.)
impossible (adj.), impossible
impostor (subs.), imposteur (mas.), charlatan (mas.)
improve, *to* (trans. verb), améliorer
impudent (adj.), impudent
in (prep.), dans (determ.), en
inattentive (adj.), inattentif
incessant (adj.), continu, incessant
incident (subs.), incident (mas.)
inclined *to* (adj.), porté à

inconvenience (subs.), incon-
 vénient (mas.)
indeed (adv.), vraiment
indicate, to (trans. verb), in-
 diquer
individual (subs.), individu
 (mas.)
indolent (adj.), indolent
induce, to (trans. verb), en-
 gager, induire (irr. verb)
inducement (subs.), motif
 (mas.)
indulgence (subs.), indulgence
 (fem.)
industry (subs.), activité
 (fem.)
inevitable (adj.), inévitable
infancy (subs.), enfance (fem.)
infantry (subs.), infanterie
 (fem.), soldats, troupes d'in-
 fanterie
inform, to (trans. verb), in-
 former
information (subs.), renseigne-
 ment (mas.)
inhabitant (subs.), habitant
 (mas.)
inheritance (subs.), héritage
 (mas.)
injured, to be, souffrir (irr.
 verb)
inn (subs.), taverne (fem.)
inquire, to (trans. verb), de-
 mander; — *about, to*, s'in-
 former de
insist, to (intrans. verb), insis-
 ter
insolence (subs.), insolence
 (fem.)
inspire, to (trans. verb), in-
 spirer
instance (subs.), exemple
 (mas.), assertion (fem.)
instruction (subs.), instruction
 (fem.)

insurgent (subs.), insurgé
 (mas.)
integrity (subs.), intégrité
 (fem.)
intend, to (intrans. verb), avoir
 l'intention de
intercept, to (trans. verb), ar-
 rêter
interrupt, to (trans. verb), in-
 terrompre
invaluable (adj.), inapprécia-
 ble
invention (subs.), génie d'in-
 vention (mas.)
inventor (subs.), inventeur
 (mas.)
invite, to (trans. verb), inviter
it (pers. pron.), il, ce (nom.);
 le, la (accus.)
Italy (subs.), Italie (fem.)
item (subs.), article (mas.)

J

John (subs.), Jean
journalist (subs.), journaliste
 (mas.)
journey (subs.), voyage (mas.)
judge (subs.), juge (mas.)
jury (subs.), jury (mas.)
juryman (subs.), juré (mas.)
just (adv.), juste, justement
justice (subs.), justice (fem.)

K

keenness (subs.), finesse (fem.)
keep, to (trans. verb), garder,
 tenir (irr. verb)
key (subs.), clef (fem.)
kind (adj.), bon, aimable
kindness (subs.), bonté (fem.),
 amabilité (fem.)
king (subs.), roi (mas.)

kingdom (subs.), royaume (mas.)
kirk (subs.), église (fem.)
kitchen (subs.), cuisine (fem.)
knot (subs.), groupe (mas.)
know, to (trans. verb), connaître (irr. verb), savoir (irr. verb)
knowledge (subs.), connaissance (fem.), éducation (fem.)

L

labour (subs.), travail (mas.), peine (fem.); —, *to* (intrans. verb), travailler
lady (subs.), dame (fem.)
land (subs.), terre (fem.), pays (mas.); *native* —, patrie (fem.)
language (subs.), langue (fem.), langage (mas.)
large (adj.), grand, gros, nombreux
last (adj.), dernier; — *week*, la semaine dernière; *at* —, (adv.), enfin; *to* — (intrans. verb), durer
late (adj.), en retard; — (ex), feu; (adv.), tard
latter (adj.), dernier; *the* —, celui-ci, celle-ci, ceux-ci, celles-ci
laugh, to (intrans. verb), rire (irr. verb)
laughter (subs.), rire (mas.), plaisir (mas.)
law (subs.), loi (fem.); *court of* —, cour de justice; *law* (jus.), droit (mas.); *to study* —, faire son droit
lawyer (subs.), homme de loi
lead, to (trans. verb), conduire, mener, commander

leap, to (intrans. verb), sauter
least (adj.), moindre; — (adv.), moins; *at* —, au moins
leave, to (trans. verb), laisser, quitter
lecture (subs.), conférence (fem.); (scolding), sermon (fem.)
lecturer (subs.), maître de conférence (mas.), conférencier
leg (subs.), jambe (fem.)
lend, to (trans. verb), prêter
length (subs.), longueur (fem.); *at* —, enfin; *at full* — (ex. 58), autant qu'il put
less (adv.), moins
lest (conj. used with the subjunctive), de peur que, de crainte que
letter (subs.), lettre (fem.)
library (subs.), bibliothèque (fem.)
licentious (adj.), licencieux
lie (subs.), mensonge (mas.); *to* — (intrans. verb), mentir (irr. verb); *to* — (intrans. verb), être couché, se coucher
life (subs.), vie (fem.)
light, to (trans. verb), allumer
like, to (trans. verb), aimer
like (prep.), comme
limit (subs.), limite (fem.)
linen (subs.), linge (mas.)
link (subs.), lien (mas.), chaîne (fem.)
liquor (subs.), liqueur (fem.), cordial (mas.)
listen to, to, écouter
literal (adj.), littéral
literary (adj.), littéraire
literature (subs.), littérature (fem.)
little (adj.), petit; — (adv.), peu (de)

littleness (subs.), <i>petitesse</i> (fem.)	mantle (subs.), <i>manteau</i> (mas.)
live, to (intrans. verb), <i>vivre</i> (irr. verb), <i>demeurer</i>	manufacture, to (trans. verb), <i>fabriquer</i>
livelihood , <i>vie</i> (fem.), <i>existence</i> (fem.); <i>to gain an easy</i> —, <i>gagner sa vie facilement</i>	many (adv.), <i>beaucoup</i> (de), <i>bien des</i>
living (adj.), <i>vivant</i> , en <i>vie</i>	marchioness (subs.), <i>marquise</i> (fem.)
lobby (subs.), <i>foyer</i> (mas.), <i>antichambre</i> (fem.)	marquis (subs.), <i>marquis</i> (mas.)
lofty (adj.), <i>haut</i> , <i>élevé</i>	marshal (subs.), <i>maréchal</i> (mas.)
London (subs.), <i>Londres</i>	mask (subs.), <i>masque</i> (mas.)
long (adj.), <i>long</i> , (fem.) <i>longue</i> ; — (adv.), <i>longtemps</i>	masterly (adj.), <i>impérieux</i>
look at, to , <i>regarder</i>	matter (subs.), <i>question</i> (fem.), <i>sujet</i> (mas.)
Lord (subs.), <i>seigneur</i> (mas.).	meagre (adj.), <i>maigre</i>
Lord (the English title), <i>Lord</i> (mas.)	mean, to (trans. and intrans. verb), <i>vouloir dire</i> (irr. verb), <i>entendre</i> , <i>signifier</i>
lordship (subs.), <i>seigneurie</i> (fem.)	means (subs.), <i>moyen</i> (mas.); <i>by all</i> —, <i>certainement</i> ; <i>by no</i> —, <i>nullement</i>
lose, to (trans. verb), <i>perdre</i>	measure (subs.), <i>mesure</i> (fem.)
loss (subs.), <i>perte</i> (fem.)	medallist (subs.), <i>médailliste</i> (mas.)
loud (adv.), <i>haut</i>	medicine (subs.), <i>médicament</i> (mas.)
ludicrous (adj.), <i>comique</i>	meet, to (trans. verb), <i>rencontrer</i>
lyric (adj.), <i>lyrique</i>	member (subs.), <i>membre</i> (mas.)

M

madam (subs.), <i>madame</i> (fem.)	memorable (adj.), <i>mémorable</i>
magistrate (subs.), <i>magistrat</i> (mas.)	mention, to (trans. verb), <i>faire mention de</i>
majesty (subs.), <i>majesté</i> (fem.)	merciful (adj.), <i>miséricordieux</i>
make, to (trans. verb), <i>faire</i> (irr. verb)	merely (adv.), <i>simplement</i>
man (subs.), <i>homme</i> (mas.)	merry (adj.), <i>joyeux</i> , <i>gai</i>
mandarin (subs.), <i>mandarin</i> (mas.)	method (subs.), <i>méthode</i> (fem.)
manner (subs.), <i>manière</i> (fem.).	midst (subs.), <i>milieu</i> (mas.)
<i>In before manner</i> is rendered by <i>de</i> . <i>In the following manner</i> , <i>de la manière suivante</i>	mile (subs.), <i>mille</i> (mas.)
manners (subs.), <i>mœurs</i> (fem.), <i>manières</i> (fem.)	military (adj.), <i>militaire</i>
	mill (subs.), <i>moulin</i> (mas.)
	million (subs.), <i>million</i> (mas.)
	mind (subs.), <i>esprit</i> (mas.)
	mindful (adj.), <i>se souvenant de</i>

mining inspector (subs.), in-
specteur des mines (mas.)
minister (subs.), ministre, pas-
teur (mas.)
ministry (subs.), ministère
(mas.)
minute (subs.), minute (fem.)
mirth (subs.), joie (fem.),
plaisir (mas.)
misbehave, to (intrans. verb),
se mal conduire (irr.
verb)
mischievous (subs.), mal (mas.)
miser (subs.), avare (mas.)
misfortune (subs.), malheur
(mas.)
mistake (subs.), faute (fem.)
mode (subs.), manière (fem.);
— *of pardon*, manière de
pardonner
modern (adj.), moderne
molar (adj.), molaire
moment (subs.), moment
(mas.), instant (mas.)
monarch (subs.), monarque
(mas.)
monastery (subs.), monastère
(mas.)
money (subs.), argent (mas.)
moon (subs.), lune (fem.)
Moor (subs.), Maure (mas.)
moral (adj.), moral
morality (subs.), moralité
(fem.)
more (adv.), plus, davantage
morning (subs.), matin (mas.),
matinée (fem.)
mortal (adj.), mortel, des
hommes
most (adv.), plus, le plus
mother (subs.), mère (fem.)
moujik (subs.), moujik (mas.)
mouth (subs.), bouche (fem.)
mouth out, to (trans. verb),
vociférer

move, to (trans. verb), ému-
voir (irr. verb)
Mr. (abbr. of Mister), M. or
Monsieur
much (adv.), beaucoup (de);
as — as, autant que; *so —*,
tant; *how —*, combien; *too*
—, trop
multitude (subs.), multitude
(fem.), foule (fem.)
musical (adj.), musical
musician (subs.), musicien
(mas.)
must (def. intrans. verb), fal-
loir (impers. irr. verb); de-
voir (when no necessity is
implied)
mutter, to (intrans. verb),
murmurer
mutual (adj.), mutuel
my (poss. adj.), mon, ma, mes
(agrees with the following
noun)
myself (ref. pron.), me; (em-
phatic) moi-même

N

name, to (trans. verb), nom-
mer
name (subs.), nom (mas.)
Naples (subs.), Naples
narrative (subs.), récit (mas.)
native (subs.), habitant (mas.),
natif (mas.); — (adj.), natal
naturally (adv.), naturelle-
ment
nature (subs.), nature (fem.)
neapolitan (adj.), napolitain
near (adv.), près; — (prep.),
près de
necessary (adj.), nécessaire; *a*
— *of*, une chose nécessaire
à

need, *to* (trans. verb), avoir besoin de; *no man — be deceived who will study*, nul homme ne sera trompé s'il étudie
needful (adj.), indispensable
neglectful (adj.), négligent
negotiate, *to* (trans. verb), négocier
neighbour (subs.), voisin (mas.)
neighbourhood (subs.), voisinage (mas.)
never (adv.), jamais
new (adj.), nouveau, (fem.) nouvelle
news (subs.), nouvelle (fem.)
newspaper (subs.), journal (mas.)
next (adj.), suivant
nineteen (adj.), dix-neuf
no (adv.), non; — (adj.), nul, aucun, pas de
nobility (subs.), noblesse (fem.)
noble (adj.), noble
nobleman (subs.), gentilhomme (mas.)
nose (subs.), nez (mas.)
not (adv.), ne... pas (used with a verb); pas, non (used without a verb)
notice, *to* (trans. verb), remarquer
novel (subs.), roman (mas.)
novelist (subs.), romancier (mas.)
now (adv.), maintenant, à présent; (referring to past time) alors
number (subs.), nombre (mas.)
nurse (subs.), garde-malade (fem.)

O

oath (subs.), serment (mas.)
obedience (subs.), obéissance (fem.)
object, *to* (intrans. verb), faire une objection
oblige, *to* (trans. verb), obliger
observation (subs.), observation (fem.), remarque (fem.)
observe, *to* (trans. verb), observer, remarquer
obtain, *to* (trans. verb), obtenir (irr. verb)
occasion (subs.), occasion (fem.)
occasionally (adv.), de temps à autre
occupy, *to* (trans. verb), occuper
occur, *to* (intrans. verb), avoir lieu, arriver, se passer
of (prep.), de
offence (subs.), offense (fem.)
official (adj.), officiel
often (adv.), souvent
old (adj.), vieux, (fem.) vieille
Oliver (subs.), Olivier
on (prep.), sur
once (adv.), une fois
one (adj.), un, une
only (adv.), seulement, simplement
open (adj.), déclaré, ouvert; *half* —, entr'ouvert
opera (subs.), opéra (mas.)
opinion (subs.), opinion (fem.)
opponent (subs.), adversaire (mas.)
oppose, *to* (trans. verb), s'opposer à
orchestra (subs.), orchestre (mas.)

order (subs.), ordre (mas.), décoration (fem.); *covered with* —s, couverte de décorations. (When a noun in a partitive sense is in the genitive, the partitive article is not translated, simply because *of* and *some* are the same in French.)
 —, *to* (trans. verb), ordonner
origin (subs.), origine (fem.)
orphan (subs.), orphelin, e
outline (subs.), contour (mas.), esquisse (fem.)
outside (prep.), au-delà de
overhear, to (trans. verb), entendre par hasard
overwhelm, to (trans. verb), accabler
owe, to (trans. verb), devoir.
Ought to is rendered by the conditional of *devoir*
own (adj.), propre
oxygen (subs.), the same word should be used in French
oyster (subs.), huître (fem.)

P

painter (subs.), peintre (mas.)
palace (subs.), palais (mas.)
pale (adj.), pâle
paper (subs.), papier (mas.)
pardon (subs.), pardon (mas.)
Paris (subs.), Paris
Parisian (adj.), parisien
part (subs.), partie (fem.)
party (subs.), partie (fem.), société (fem.), soirée (fem.); — (sect) parti (mas.)
pass, to (intrans. verb), passer
pathetic (adj.), pathétique
patience (subs.), patience (fem.)

patient (adj.), patient; *to be* — *of*, pouvoir endurer
patrimony (subs.), patrimoine (mas.)
pause, to (intrans. verb), s'arrêter, faire une pause
pay, to (trans. verb), payer
paymaster (subs.), payeur (mas.)
payment (subs.), paiement (mas.)
peace (subs.), paix (fem.)
peasant (subs.), paysan (mas.)
peevish (adj.), acariâtre
penny (subs.), penny (mas.), deux sous (mas.)
people (subs.), peuple (mas.), gens (mas.)
perfect (adj.), parfait
perfidy (subs.), perfidie (fem.)
perform, to (intrans. verb), jouer, donner des représentations
perhaps (adv.), peut-être
period (subs.), époque (fem.)
perish, to (intrans. verb), périr
permission (subs.), permission (fem.)
permit, to (trans. verb), permettre (irr. verb)
person (subs.), personne (fem.)
personal (adj.), personnel
pertinent (adj.), établi
pester, to (trans. verb), tourmenter
philosopher (subs.), philosophe (mas.)
phrase (subs.), phrase (fem.)
physician (subs.), médecin (mas.)
pick up, to (trans. verb), ramasser
piece (subs.), morceau (mas.)
pilgrim (subs.), pèlerin (mas.)

pilgrimage (subs.), pèlerinage (mas.)	post-master (subs.), maître de poste (mas.)
pillage , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), piller	post-office (subs.), poste (fem.), bureau de poste (mas.)
pin (subs.), épingle (fem.)	pound (subs.), livre (fem.)
pipe (subs.), chalumeau (mas.), flûte (fem.)	poverty (subs.), pauvreté (fem.)
place (subs.), place (fem.), endroit (mas.)	power (subs.), pouvoir (mas.), puissance (fem.)
plain (subs.), plaine (fem.)	praise , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), louer
play (subs.), pièce (fem.)	pray , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), prier
plea (subs.), justification (fem.), excuse (fem.)	prayer (subs.), prière (fem.)
plead , <i>to</i> (intrans. and trans. verb), plaider	preach , <i>to</i> (intrans. verb), prêcher
please , <i>to</i> (intrans. and trans. verb), plaire (irr. verb), vouloir (irr. verb); <i>till he be pleased</i> , qu'il lui plaise	preface (subs.), préface (fem.)
plot (subs.), intrigue (fem.)	prefer , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), préférer
pocket (subs.), poche (fem.)	preliminary (subs.), préliminaire (mas.)
poem (subs.), poème (mas.)	prescription (subs.), ordonnance (fem.)
poet (subs.), poète (mas.)	presence (subs.), présence (fem.)
point out , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), faire remarquer, montrer au doigt	present (subs.), cadeau (mas.); — (adj.), présent
politeness (subs.), politesse (fem.)	pressing (adj.), détaillé
pomp (subs.), pompe (fem.)	presumption (subs.), audace (fem.), présomption (fem.)
poor (adj.), pauvre	prevalence (subs.), règne (mas.)
populace (subs.), populace (fem.)	prevent , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), empêcher
port (subs.), posture (fem.)	price (subs.), prix (mas.)
portrait (subs.), portrait (mas.)	prince (subs.), prince (mas.)
position (subs.), position (fem.)	princess (subs.), princesse (fem.)
possess , <i>to</i> (trans. verb), posséder	principle (subs.), principe (mas.)
post (subs.), poste (mas.), place (fem.)	prison (subs.), prison (fem.)
postage (subs.), port de lettre (mas.)	prisoner (subs.), prisonnier (mas.), accusé (mas.)
posterity (subs.), postérité (fem.)	prize (subs.), prix (mas.)
	probability (subs.), probabilité (fem.); <i>in all</i> —, selon toute probabilité

probable (adj.), probable
 produce, *to* (trans. verb), produire (irr. verb)
 production (subs.), production (fem.)
 profess, *to* (trans. verb), professer
 professional (adj.), professionnel; — *man*, médecin (mas.)
 progression (subs.), progression (fem.), marche (fem.)
 prompter (subs.), souffleur (mas.)
 pronounce, *to* (trans. verb), prononcer
 prosperous (adj.), prospère
 protector (subs.), protecteur (mas.)
 provincial (adj.), de province
 Prussia (subs.), Prusse (fem.)
 public (subs.), public (mas.); — (adj.), public, (fem.) publique
 pull, *to* (trans. verb), tirer
 punch (subs.), punch (mas.)
 punish, *to* (trans. verb), punir
 punishment (subs.), punition (fem.), châtimement (mas.)
 pure (adj.), pur
 purpose (subs.), but (mas.), dessein (mas.)
 put, *to* (trans. verb), mettre (irr. verb)

Q

quaint (adj.), bizarre
 quality (subs.), qualité (fem.)
 quarterly (adj.), trimestriel
 queer (adj.), étrange
 query (subs.), question (fem.)
 question (subs.), question (fem.)
 quietly (adv.), tranquillement

quite (adv.), bien, tout, tout-à-fait
 quote, *to* (trans. verb), citer

R

rapidity (subs.), rapidité (fem.)
 rather (adv.), plutôt, quelque peu
 read, *to* (trans. verb), lire
 reader (subs.), lecteur (mas.)
 really (adv.), réellement
 reason (subs.), raison (fem.), excuse (fem.)
 reasonably (adv.), raisonnablement
 rebellion (subs.), rébellion (fem.), insurrection (fem.)
 rebuke (subs.), réprimande (fem.)
 receipt (subs.), reçu (mas.)
 receive, *to* (trans. verb), recevoir
 recently (adv.), récemment
 recognise, *to* (trans. verb), reconnaître (irr. verb)
 recollect, *to* (trans. verb), se rappeler
 recover, *to* (trans. verb), recouvrer
 refer to, *to* (intrans. verb), se rapporter à
 regard (subs.), égard (mas.)
 regret (subs.), regret (mas.); *to* — (trans. verb), regretter
 rehearse, *to* (trans. verb), répéter
 reject, *to* (trans. verb), rejeter
 rejoinder (subs.), répartie (fem.), réplique (fem.)
 relate, *to* (trans. verb), raconter
 relationship (subs.), parenté (fem.)

- remain**, *to* (intrans. verb), *rester*
remainder (subs.), *reste* (mas.)
remark (subs.), *remarque* (fem.)
remarkably (adv.), *excessivement*
remember, *to* (trans. verb), *se rappeler*
remind, *to* (trans. verb), *rappe-
peler*
render, *to* (trans. verb), *rendre*
reply (subs.), *réponse* (fem.);
to — (intrans. verb), *répon-
dre*
repose (subs.), *repos* (mas.)
represent, *to* (trans. verb), *re-
présenter*
representative (subs.), *repré-
sentant* (mas.), *expression*
 (fem.)
reproof (subs.), *blâme* (mas.)
reprove, *to* (trans. verb),
blâmer, *censurer*
republic (subs.), *république*
 (fem.)
reputation (subs.), *réputation*
 (fem.)
request (subs.), *requête* (fem.),
demande (fem.); *to* — (trans.
 verb), *prier*, *demander*
require, *to* (trans. verb), *exi-
ger*
resemble, *to* (trans. verb), *res-
sembler à*
residence (subs.), *résidence*
 (fem.)
resolve, *to* (trans. verb), *dé-
cider*, *résoudre* (irr. verb);
 — (intrans. verb), *se dé-
cider à*
respect (subs.), *respect* (mas.);
to — (trans. verb), *respecter*
respecting (prep.), *touchant*,
concernant
- rest** (subs.), *reste* (mas.)
retire, *to* (trans. verb), *retirer*;
 — (intrans. verb), *se retirer*
retort, *to* (trans. verb), *répli-
quer*
retreat (subs.), *retraite* (fem.)
return, *to* (intrans. verb), *re-
tourner*, *revenir* (irr. verb);
to — *home*, *rentrer*; — (*to*
reply), *répliquer*, *repartir*
reverse (subs.), *revers* (mas.)
review (subs.), *revue* (fem.)
richly (adv.), *richement*
rise, *to* (intrans. verb), *se lever*
risk (subs.), *risque* (mas.)
rival, *to* (intrans. verb), *riva-
liser* (avec)
rivalry (subs.), *rivalité* (fem.)
rob, *to* (trans. verb), *voler*
roll (subs.), *liste* (fem.)
Roman (adj.), *Romain*
Rome (subs.), *Rome*
room (subs.), *chambre* (fem.),
salle (fem.), *salon* (mas.),
place (fem.)
roused (past part.), *poussé à
bout*, *impatienté*
rout, *to* (trans. verb), *mettre
en déroute* (irr. verb)
royal (adj.), *royal*
royalty (subs.), *royauté* (fem.)
runner (subs.), *coureur*
Russian (adj.), *russe*; *the* —
capital, *la capitale de la
Russie*
rustic (adj.), *rustique*

S

- sadly** (adv.), *tristement*
sail, *to* (intrans. verb), *faire
voile* (irr. verb), *faire une
promenade en mer*
salt (subs.), *sel* (mas.); — *water*,
eau salée

same (adj.), même
sarcastically (adv.), d'une manière sarcastique
satirise, to (trans. verb), satiriser
satisfy, to (trans. verb), satisfaire (irr. verb)
sauce (subs.), sauce (fem.)
save, to (trans. verb), sauver
saw, to (trans. verb), scier
say, to (trans. verb), dire (irr. verb)
scandal (subs.), scandale (mas.), médisance (fem.); *the school for* —, l'école de la médisance
scarcely (adv.), à peine, guère
scene (subs.), scène (fem.)
scepticism (subs.), scepticisme (mas.)
school (subs.), école (fem.)
scientific (adj.), scientifique
Scotland (subs.), Écosse (fem.)
sculptor (subs.), sculpteur (mas.)
sea (subs.), mer (fem.)
search for, to (trans. verb), chercher
seat (subs.), siège (mas.); *to oneself* (refl. verb), s'asseoir
see, to (trans. verb), voir (irr. verb)
seize, to (trans. verb), saisir
sell, to (trans. verb), vendre
send, to (trans. verb), envoyer (irr. future); *to — for*, envoyer chercher, faire venir
sensation (subs.), sensation (fem.)
senses (subs.), sens (mas.); *to lose one's* —, perdre connaissance, perdre l'usage de ses sens

servant (subs.), domestique, serviteur (mas.)
service (subs.), service (mas.)
seven (adj.), sept
seventy (adj.), soixante-dix
severe (adj.), sévère
sexton (subs.), fossoyeur (mas.)
shake, to (trans. verb), ébranler
shape (subs.), forme (fem.)
sharp (adj.), habile, fin, malin
sharpen, to (trans. verb), aiguïser
sharply (adv.), brusquement
shave, to (trans. verb), raser, faire la barbe à; — (intrans. verb), se raser, se faire la barbe
shelf (subs.), tablette (fem.)
shell (subs.), écaille (fem.)
ship (subs.), vaisseau (mas.)
shirt (subs.), chemise (fem.)
shop (subs.), boutique (fem.), magasin (mas.)
shore (subs.), rivage (mas.); *on* —, à terre
short (adj.), court; *a — time*, peu de temps
shot (subs.), boulet (mas.)
shoulder (subs.), épaule (fem.)
show, to (trans. verb), montrer
Sicilian (adj.), sicilien
sick (adj.), malade
sickness (subs.), maladie (fem.)
signature (subs.), signature (fem.)
significant (adj.), significatif
sill (subs.), allège (fem.)
simple (adj.), simple
simplicity (subs.), simplicité (fem.)
sing, to (trans. and intrans. verb), chanter
singer (subs.), barde (mas.), chanteur

- single** (adj.), seul
singular (adj.), singulier
sink, to (trans. verb), jeter,
 couler; — (intrans. verb),
 s'affaiblir
sir (subs.), monsieur (mas.)
sire (subs.), sire (mas.)
sister (subs.), sœur (fem.)
sit, to (trans. verb), s'asseoir
 (irr. verb); *to be sitting*,
 être assis
skilful (adj.), habile, adroit
skill (subs.), habileté (fem.)
slender (adj.), maigre, élancé
slip (subs.), petit morceau
smile (subs.), sourire (mas.)
smoke, to (trans. and intrans.
 verb), fumer
smuggled (past part.), de contre-
 bande
so (adv.), si; — (conj.), aussi
soldier (subs.), soldat (mas.)
solemn (adj.), solennel
solemnly (adv.), solennelle-
 ment
solo (subs.), solo (mas.)
some (partit. art.), du, de la,
 de l', des; — *of*, quelques-
 uns des; — *one*, quelqu'un
sometimes (adv.), quelquefois
somewhat (adv.), un peu, quel-
 que peu
son (subs.), fils (mas.)
song (subs.), chanson (fem.)
soon (adv.), bientôt, tôt; *as* —
as, aussitôt que
sorry (adj.), contrarié, fâché
sort (subs.), sorte (fem.),
 espèce (fem.)
south (subs.), sud (mas.)
sovereign (subs.), souverain
sound (subs.), son (mas.), bruit
 (mas.)
Spain (subs.), Espagne (mas.)
Spanish (adj.), espagnol
speak, to (intrans. verb), parler
specially (adv.), spécialement
speculation (subs.), théorie
 (fem.), conjecture (fem.)
speech (subs.), discours (mas.),
 paroles (fem.)
spend, to (trans. verb), dé-
 penser
spirit (subs.), courage (mas.),
 ardeur (fem.), esprit (mas.)
spiritual (adj.), spirituel
splendid (adj.), magnifique,
 splendide
spur (subs.), éperon (mas.)
stage (subs.), scène (fem.)
stalk off, to (trans. verb),
 quitter à pas majestueux
stamp (subs.), timbre (mas.),
 timbre-poste
stand, to (intrans. verb), être,
 se tenir; *stood eighty*
degrees, fût à quatre-vingts
 degrés; — (trans. verb), en-
 durer, supporter
state (subs.), état (mas.)
stay, to (intrans. verb), res-
 ter
steal, to (trans. verb), voler
step, to (intrans. verb), mar-
 cher; *to—forward*, s'avan-
 cer
stick (subs.), canne (fem.)
stiff (adj.), raide
still (adv.), encore
stimulate, to (trans. verb),
 stimuler
stone (subs.), pierre (fem.)
story (subs.), histoire (fem.),
 anecdote (fem.)
St. Petersburg (subs.), Saint-
 Pétersbourg
strange (adj.), étrange
street (subs.), rue (fem.)
stretch out, to (trans. verb),
 étendre

strike, *to* (trans. verb), frapper; *to*—*a blow*, donner un coup
struggle (subs.), lutte (fem.)
studious (adj.), recherché
study (subs.), étude (fem.); *to*—(trans. verb), étudier
subdue, *to* (trans. verb), dompter, subjuguier
subject (subs.), sujet (mas.)
succeed *to*, *to* (followed by a noun and meaning 'to come after'), succéder à; *to* *succeed in* (followed by a verb and meaning 'to be successful'), réussir à, parvenir à (irr. verb); *to* *succeed* (intrans. verb), se succéder
successful (adj.), heureux
such (adj.), tel, pareil; — *a*, un tel; — (before an adjective), si
suddenly (adv.), tout-à-coup
sufficiently (adv.), suffisamment
suicide (subs.), suicide (mas.)
sullen (adj.), sombre, triste, maussade
sum (subs.), somme (fem.)
summer (subs.), été (mas.)
sun (subs.), soleil (mas.)
superb (adj.), magnifique
supercilious (adj.), dédaigneux
superior (adj.), supérieur
superstitious (adj.), superstitieux
suppose, *to* (trans. verb), supposer
surgeon (subs.), chirurgien (mas.)
surprise, *to* (trans. verb), surprendre (irr. verb)
surround, *to* (trans. verb), entourer

survive, *to* (trans. verb), survivre à (irr. verb)
sustenance (subs.), nourriture (fem.)
swarm, *to* (intrans. verb), fourmiller
sway (subs.), empire (mas.); *great*—, beaucoup d'empire
swear, *to* (trans. and intrans. verb), jurer
swift (adj.), rapide
swim, *to* (intrans. verb), nager
symptom (subs.), symptôme (mas.)

T

table (subs.), table (fem.)
take, *to* (trans. verb), prendre (irr. verb); *to*—*off*, ôter; *to*—*away*, emporter; *to*—*into*, mettre (irr. verb); *to*—*in*, attraper: *to*—*care to*, prendre garde de
tale (subs.), conte (mas.)
talent (subs.), talent (mas.)
talk, *to* (intrans. verb), parler
causer
tall (adj.), grand; *a*—*man*, un homme grand
tap, *to* (trans. verb), taper, toucher
tar (subs.), matelot (mas.)
taste (subs.), goût (mas.)
tease, *to* (trans. verb), taquiner
tell, *to* (trans. verb), dire (irr. verb), raconter
tender (adj.), tendre
than (conj.), que
that (dem. adj.), ce, cet, cette; — (dem. pron.), celui, celle; — (*that thing*), cela; *that is*, voilà
theatre (subs.), théâtre (mas.)
theft (subs.), vol (mas.)

- their** (poss. adj.), leur, leurs
theirs (poss. pron.), le leur, la leur, les leurs
then (adv.), ensuite, alors, donc
there (adv.), là; — *is*, il y a
thermometer (subs.), thermomètre (mas.)
thief (subs.), voleur (mas.)
thin (adj.), maigre
thing (subs.), chose (fem.); *something*, quelque chose (mas.)
think, to (intrans. verb), penser; *he thought that a man like him*, il lui sembla qu'un homme comme lui
third (ordin. adj.), troisième; — (fract. adj.), tiers, (fem.) tierce
thirteen (adj.), treize
thirty (adj.), trente
this (dem. adj.), ce, cet, cette; — (*this thing*), ceci; *this is*, voici
those (dem. adj.), ces; — (dem. pron.), ceux, celles
thought (subs.), pensée (fem.)
thoughtful (adj.), pensif, attentif
thousand (adj.), mille; — (subs.), millier (mas.)
threshold (subs.), seuil (mas.); *on the very—*, au commencement même
through (prep.), à travers, par
throw, to (trans. verb), jeter; *to—back*, rejeter, jeter de côté
tie, to (trans. verb), attacher, lier
till (prep.), jusqu'à; — (conj.), jusqu'à ce que (with the subjunctive)
time (subs.), temps (mas.), époque (fem.), moment (mas.), heure (fem.), fois (fem.)
tint (subs.), teinte (fem.)
to (prep.), à
together (adv.), ensemble
to-morrow (adv.), demain
ton (subs.), tonneau (mas.)
tongue (subs.), langue (fem.)
tonsor (subs.), Figaro de village
tooth (subs.), dent (fem.)
torture (subs.), torture (fem.), supplice (mas.)
totally (adv.), entièrement
touch, to (trans. verb), toucher
town (subs.), ville (fem.)
trace, to (trans. verb), tracer
tragedian (subs.), tragédien (mas.)
tragic (adj.), tragique
tranquil (adj.), calme
transmit, to (trans. verb), transmettre (irr. verb)
trap (subs.), voiture (fem.)
traveller (subs.), voyageur (mas.)
treason (subs.), trahison (fem.)
treaty (subs.), traité (mas.)
tremendous (adj.), énorme
tribe (subs.), tribu (fem.)
triumph (subs.), triomphe (mas.)
troop (subs.), troupe (fem.)
trophy (subs.), trophée (mas.)
true (adj.), vrai
truth (subs.), vérité (fem.)
try, to (trans. verb), essayer; *to betried*, être mis en jugement
turbulent (adj.), turbulent
turn, to (trans. verb), tourner; — (intrans. verb), se tourner; — (subs.), tour (mas.); *at every turn*, à tout propos

two (adj.), deux
tyrannise, *to* (trans. verb),
 tyranniser

U

unable (adj.), incapable; *to be* —, ne pas pouvoir
unanimously (adv.), à l'unanimité
unappreciative (adj.), incapable d'apprécier le talent
unchallenged and unapproached, que personne ne dispute et ne peut atteindre
uncle (subs.), oncle (mas.)
undecieve, *to* (trans. verb), dé-tromper, désabuser
under (prep.), sous
understand, *to* (trans. verb), comprendre (irr. verb)
undertake, *to* (trans. verb), entreprendre (irr. verb)
unhappy (adj.), malheureux
unite, *to* (trans. verb), réunir
unluckily (adv.), malheureusement
unnatural (adj.), dénaturé
unwell (adv.), mal portant
unwilling (adj.), mal disposé
upon (prep.); sur
upright (adv.), droit
upstairs (adv.), en haut
urgently (adv.), urgemment
use, *to* (trans. verb), traiter; *to — to* (intrans. verb), avoir l'habitude de (not translated before a verb and giving it the force of an imperfect indicative)
usual (adj.), habituel; — (adv.), d'habitude
utmost (adj.), plus grand

V

vain (adj.), vain; *in* —, en vain

valley (subs.), vallée (fem.)
value (subs.), valeur (fem.)
various (adj.), différent
verse (subs.), vers (mas.)
very (adj.), même (*to be placed after the substantive*); — (adv.), très, fort, bien
vigorous (adj.), vigoureux
village (subs.), village (mas.)
violence (subs.), violence (fem.)
violent (adj.), violent
violin (subs.), violon (mas.)
vire (subs.), vire, la vire
visit (subs.), visite (fem.); *to —* (trans. verb), visiter, faire une visite à
vivacity (subs.), vivacité (fem.)
vote (subs.), vote (mas.); *to —*, (intrans. verb), voter
vouch for, *to* (trans. verb), attester
vow, *to* (intrans. verb), jurer

W

wait for, *to* (trans. verb), attendre; *to — upon*, visiter, servir
waiter (subs.), garçon, sommelier (mas.)
waking, **half**, assoupissement (mas.)
walk (subs.), promenade (fem.)
wall (subs.), mur (mas.)
want (subs.), manque (mas.); *to —* (trans. verb), vouloir (irr. verb), avoir besoin de
war (subs.), guerre (fem.)
warmly (adv.), avec chaleur
warrior (subs.), guerrier (mas.)
water (subs.), eau (fem.)
Waterloo (subs.), Waterloo
way (subs.), chemin (mas.)

weather (subs.), temps (mas.)	wish, to (trans. verb), désirer,
week (subs.), semaine (fem.)	vouloir (irr. verb)
weigh, to (trans. and intrans. verb), peser	wit (subs.), esprit (mas.)
weight (subs.), poids (mas.)	with (prep.), avec
welcome (adj.), bienvenu	without (prep.), sans
well (adv.), bien ; — (interj.), eh bien	withstand, to (trans. verb), résister à
western (adj.), de l'ouest	witness, to (trans. verb), être témoin de
what (adj.), quel ; — (ind. pron.), (subj.) qu'est-ce qui, (object) que, qu'est-ce que, (disjunctively) quoi ; — (<i>that which</i>), ce qui (subj.), ce que (object)	witty (adj.), spirituel
when (conj.), quand, lorsque	woeful (adj.), douloureux
where (adv.), où	wonder, to (intrans. verb), s'étonner
whereupon (adv.), là-dessus, sur quoi	word (subs.), mot (mas.), parole (fem.)
whether (conj.), si	work (subs.), ouvrage (mas.), travail (mas.)
which (rel. pron.), qui (subj.), que (obj.) ; (referring to a whole proposition) ce qui (subject), ce que (object)	world (subs.), monde (mas.)
while (conj.), pendant que	worthy (subs.), homme illustre
whiskey (subs.), whisky (mas.)	wrist (subs.), poignet (mas.)
who (rel. pron.), qui	write, to (trans. verb), écrire (irr. verb)
whole (adj.), tout ; <i>the</i> —, tout le	wrong, to be , avoir tort
whom (rel. pron.), que, le quel ; (disjunct.) qui, lequel	
whose (rel. pron.), dont	
why (conj.), pourquoi ; — (interj.), mais, eh bien, bah	
wicked (adj.), méchant	
wife (subs.), femme (fem.)	
wind (subs.), vent (mas.)	
window (subs.), fenêtre (fem.)	
winter (subs.), hiver (mas.)	
wire (subs.), fil métallique (mas.)	
wisdom (subs.), sagesse (fem.)	

Y

year (subs.), an (mas.), année (fem.)
yet (adv.), encore : — (conj.), cependant
yes (adv.) ; oui ; (after a negative question) si
you (pers. pron.), vous
young (adj.), jeune
your (poss. adj.), votre, (plur.) vos
yours (poss. pron.), le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres

Z

zero (subs.), zéro (mas.)

HACHETTE'S NEW SERIES OF LATIN CLASSICS

Compiled from the best texts available, and edited for Schools and Candidates preparing for Examinations.

CÆSAR, DE BELLO GALLICO. Edited by J. F. DAVIS, D.Lit., M.A. (Lond.); *Assistant Examiner in the University of London; Examiner of Schools for the same University, etc.* :—

- Book I. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. 1s. 6d.
- * Book IV. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. 1s. 6d.
- * Book IV. With Vocabulary only. 9d.
- * Books IV. and V. (in one vol.). With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. 2s.
- * Books IV. and V. (in one vol.). With Vocabulary and Map only. 1s. 6d.
- * Book V. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. 1s. 6d.
- * Book V. With Vocabulary only. 9d.
- Books V. and VI. (in one vol.). With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. 2s.
- Book VI. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. 1s. 6d.
- * Book VII. With Vocabulary. 9d.

"Both introduction and notes are well within the capacity of young pupils, to whom they should be useful in preparing for the Oxford and Cambridge Local Examinations. The book is strongly bound and clearly printed."—*School Guardian*.

"The notes are apt and brief, taking up specialities in construction and niceties of translation. In the vocabulary we notice that idiomatic phrases likely to perplex *hirones* have been carefully explained."—*Educational News*.

"Everything necessary for the thorough study of the book is included. . . . The text is followed by copious notes which translate all the difficult expressions and make the grammatical construction clear. Then comes a full Latin-English Vocabulary supplying every verbal need of the student. . . . For a private student this series will be invaluable, and might well be named 'The Classics Made Easy.'"—*Nottingham Express*.

CICERO, PRO LEGE MANILIA. Edited with Introduction, Notes, a full Analysis, Index of Proper Names, and Vocabulary, by the Rev. RALPH HARVEY, M.A. (Lond.); *Headmaster of Cork Grammar School*. Cloth, 2s.

OVID, METAMORPHOSES. Book XIII. With Introduction, Notes, Index of Proper Names, and Vocabulary, by Rev. R. HARVEY, M.A. (Lond.); *Headmaster of Cork Grammar School*. Cloth, 2s.

"The text is elegantly printed, and it affords pleasure to peruse. The notes form a considerable proportion of the bulk of the little volume, and are those of a scholar who thoroughly appreciates and has made a kindly study of the difficulties that lie in the path of the student. The quantities are marked so that the learner cannot go wrong; and the editing is most wholesome and careful."—*Irish Times*.

"Could hardly be improved upon. The notes are sound and judiciously selected, considerable help being given in translation to obviate the use of cribs. An excellent vocabulary and a copious index of proper names add to the value of the book."—*Freeman's Journal*.

* **VERGIL, ÆNEID.** Edited by J. F. DAVIS, D.Lit., M.A. (Lond.), etc.

Book V. With Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, and brief Rules on Quantity. Cloth, 1s. 6d.

* Book IX. With Vocabulary. Cloth, 9d.

* *The Latin-English Vocabularies in the above Latin Classics include numerous Idiomatic Phrases and Notes on Personal and Geographical Names. The Vocabularies to the Volumes indicated by asterisks can likewise be had separately without the Text. Price, each, in Paper Covers, 6d.; or the Vocabularies to Books IV. and V. of Cæsar, "De Bello Gallico," together in one Volume, Paper Cover, 9d.*

A NEW ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR

Based upon the *Grammaire Latine* of MICHEL BRÉAL, Membre de
l'Institut, Professeur au Collège de France, and LÉONCE PERSON,
Ancien Professeur au Lycée Condorcet.

ADAPTED FOR USE IN ENGLISH SCHOOLS

BY

HENRY BELCHER, M.A. (Lond.)

*Fellow of King's College, London; Rector of the High School of Otago, N.Z.
formerly Master of the University of London Class, King's
College, and Chaplain to the School.*

Two Parts (Accidence and Syntax), Complete in One
Volume, 500 Pages. Crown 8vo. Cloth, 3s. 6d.

Part I, Accidence, *separately*. 212 Pages. Cloth, 2s.

Part II, Syntax. 294 Pages. Cloth, 2s.

"The editor has adopted as the basis of his book the popular and well-reputed *Grammaire Latine Élémentaire* produced under the conjoint editorship of Michel Bréal and of Léonce Person, and has adopted the materials of that accredited class-book for use in English Schools. This he has done, not by merely translating the *Grammaire Latine*, or by mainly adopting its contents as they stood in its pages, but by accepting its arrangement and following its plan. . . . The rare simplicity of style and perspicuity of exposition, for which the French have such an unquestioned reputation, Mr. Belcher has imitated, and has thereby imparted clearness and neatness to the instructions found in every Latin Grammar. The letterpress used for the essentials of grammar is bold and plain, while that employed for subordinate and exceptional matter is smaller, but very distinct, and the typographical expedients for gaining attention to the more important details are carefully planned and consistently carried out. The new Grammar consists of two parts: (1) the Accidence, with an appendix and an index of nearly 400 references; (2) Syntax—the doctrine of the sentence, in 337 paragraphs, to the matter contained in which there are 800 references in the index. . . . The new Grammar is full in the exposition of the etymology and accidence; but it is in the syntax that the freshness of form and the excellence of plan are most apparent. . . . We commend it heartily."—*Educational News*.

L
W

